Learn English Grammar

Through Exercises * Answers

The fastest and easiest way to learn

تعلم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية

تمارين وحلول

أسرع وأسهل طريقة للتعليم والتعلم

Learn English Grammar

Through Exercises *Answers

The fastest and easiest way to learn

....

تعلم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية

تمارين وحلول

أسرع وأسهل طريقة للتعليم والتعلم

Prepared by:

Majid Dudin

/تعلم قواعد اللغة الإنكليزية/

تمارين وحلول

أسهل وأسرع طريقة للتعليم والتعلم

إعداد: ماجد دودين

الطبعة الأولى: 2007.

عدد النسخ: 1000 نسخة.

الإخراج الفني: بشار الحلبي

تصميم الغلاف: فيصل حفيان

جميع العمليات الفنية والطباعية تمت في:

دار ومؤسسة رسلان للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

E

يطلب الكتاب على العنوان التالي:

دار ومؤسسة رسلان

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

سوريا ـ دمشق ـ جرمانا

هاتف: 5627060 ـ تلفاكس: 5632860

ص. ب: 259 جرمانا

(1) The simple present of the verb to be

Exercises for Chapter (1)

1.Change the following pairs of words into sentences, using the correct forms of the Simple Present of the verb to be. For example:

I, cautious

I am cautious.

they, friendly

They are friendly.

1. you, careful
2. it, warm
3. he, here
4. we, bold
5. they, careless
6. she, clever
7. we, ready
8. you, reckless
9. I, shy
10. they, polite

Answers to exercise 1 :

1. You are careful
2. It is warm
3. He is here
4. We are bold
5. They are careless
6. She is clever
7. We are ready
8. You are reckless
9. I am shy
10. They are polite.

2. Change the affirmative statements resulting from Exercise1 into questions. For example:

I am cautious.

Am I cautious?

They are friendly.

Are they friendly?

Answers to exercise 2:

1. Are you careful?
2. Is it warm?
3. Is he here?
4. Are we bold?
5. Are they careless?
6. Is she clever?
7. Are we ready?
8. Are you reckless?
9. Am I shy?
10. Are they polite?

3.Change the affirmative statements resulting from Exercise1 into negative statements. For example:

I am cautious.

I am not cautious.

They are friendly.

They are not friendly.

Answers to exercise 3:

1. You are not careful.
2. It is not warm.
3. He is not here.
4. We are not bold.
5. They are not careless.
6. She is not clever.
7. We are not ready.
8. You are not reckless.
9. I am not shy.
10. They are not polite.

4.Change the affirmative statements resulting from Exercise 1 into negative questions. Except where the subject of the verb is I, write both the form without contractions and the form with contractions. For example:

I am cautious.

Am I not cautious?

They are friendly.

Are they not friendly?

Aren't they friendly?

Answers to exercise 4:

1. Are you not careful? Aren't you careful?
2. Is it not warm? Isn't it warm?
3. Is he not here? Isn't he here?
4. Are we not bold? Aren't we bold?
5. Are they not careless? Aren't they careless?
6. Is she not clever? Isn't she clever?
7. Are we not ready? Aren't we ready?
8. Are you not reckless? Aren't you reckless?
9. Am I not shy?
10. Are they not polite? Aren't they polite?

5.Add negative tag questions to the ends of the affirmative statements resulting from Exercise 1. Except where the subject of the verb is I, use contractions for the tag questions. For example:

I am cautious.

I am cautious, am I not?

They are friendly.

They are friendly, aren't they?

Answers to exercise 5:

1. You are careful, aren't you?
2. It is warm, isn't it?
3. He is here, isn't he?
4. We are bold, aren't we?
5. They are careless, aren't they?
6. She is clever, isn't she?
7. We are ready, aren't we?
8. You are reckless, aren't you?
9. I am shy, am I not?
10. They are polite, aren't they?

6. Using the Simple Present of the verb to be, and making sure that the word order is correct, form the following groups of words into grammatically correct statements or questions. If the symbol? is present, form the words into a question. If the word not is present, form the words into a negative

statement or negative question. Do not use contractions in this exercise. For example:

it, brown — It is brown.

you,?, excited — Are you excited?

I, satisfied, not — I am not satisfied.

not,?, they, ready — Are they not ready?

1. you,?, hungry
2. we,?, not, correct
3. he,?, happy
4. not,?, it, cold
5. she, here
6. I, early,?
7. they, wrong, not
8. you,?, comfortable
9. they,?, not, strong
10. not,?, I, fortunate
11. it, slippery,?
12. not, you, late
13. it, not,?, important
14. we, famous
15. they, present,?

Answers to exercise 6:

1. Are you hungry?
2. Are we not correct?
3. Is he happy?
4. Is it not cold?
5. She is here.
6. Am I early?
7. They are not wrong.
8. Are you comfortable?
9. Are they not strong?
10. Am I not fortunate? ii. Is it slippery?
11. You are not late.
12. Is it not important?
13. We are famous.
14. Are they present?

(2) The simple present of verbs other than the verb to be

EXERCISES for Chapter (2)

1. Using the Simple Present tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

I .... to the radio. (to listen) I listen to the radio.

He .... to the radio. (to listen) He listens to the radio.

1. She .... the guitar. (to play)
2. We .... soccer. (to play)
3. They .... to talk. (to like)
4. He .... ice cream. (to like)
5. You .... your friends often. (to call)
6. He .... the office every day. (to call)
7. She .... regularly. (to practice)
8. They .... once a week. (to practice)
9. We .... here. (to shop)
10. It .... delicious. (to taste)

Answers to exercise 1:

1. plays
2. play
3. like
4. likes
5. call
6. calls
7. practices
8. practice
9. shop
10. tastes

2. Using the Simple Present tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verb to have. For example:

I ……………………..….. a pen. I have a pen.

He ………………….... two pencils. He has two pencils.

1. I .... many books.
2. You .... an apartment.
3. He .... a bicycle.
4. We .... fun.
5. They .... two sleds.
6. She .... milk in her tea.
7. I .... a warm sweater.
8. We .... breakfast at eight o'clock.
9. He .... an alarm clock.
10. They .... a sense of humor.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. have
2. have
3. has
4. have
5. have
6. has
7. have
8. have
9. has
10. have

3. Paying attention to which verbs change their spelling before adding s in the third person singular, fill in the blanks with the Simple Present of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

He always .... promptly. (to reply)

He always replies promptly.

She ………………………………………… little. (to say)

She says little.

They ……………………………… bridge once a week. (to play)

They play bridge once a week.

1. He .... it. (to deny)
2. They .... to be on time. (to try)
3. It .... to be careful. (to pay)
4. She .... hard. (to study)
5. You .... good manners. (to display)

6. He always .... himself. (to enjoy)
7. She .... to Ireland once a year. (to fly)
8. We .... five people. (to employ)
9. He .... his friends. (to accompany)
10. She .... chocolate chip cookies every week. (to buy)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. denies
2. try
3. pays
4. studies
5. display
6. enjoys
7. flies
8. employ
9. accompanies
10. buys

4. Paying attention to which verbs take s and which take es in the third person singular, fill in the blanks with the Simple Present of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

He…………………………………… everywhere on foot. (to go)

He goes everywhere on foot.

It …………………………………………… surprising. (to seem)

It seems surprising.

They ………………………………………..……… skiing. (to teach)

They teach skiing.

1. She .... a great deal of work. (to do)
2. He .... television every evening. (to watch)
3. She .... a horse. (to own)
4. We .... the dishes every night. (to do)
5. She .... she had a pair of skates. (to wish)
6. He .... us to call him. (to want)
7. She …………………………. she made a mistake. (to confess)
8. He usually .... the truth. (to tell)
9. They .... apples to make cider. (to press)
10. It .... out easily. (to wash)

Answers to exercise 4:

1. does
2. watches
3. owns
4. do
5. wishes
6. wants
7. confesses
8. tells
9. press
10. washes

5. For each of the following verbs, underline the letter or letters representing the sound preceding the es ending, and then indicate the number of syllables in the verb. For example:

Wishes…….. wishes 2

laces ……. laces 2

takes …….. takes 1

1. watches………………………………
2. teases………………………………
3. likes ………………………………
4. rushes ………………………………
5. faces………………………………
6. dines ………………………………
7. misses ………………………………
8. tames………………………………
9. scares ………………………………
10. passes ………………………………
11. pinches ………………………………
12. wades ………………………………

Answers to exercise 5:

1. watches 2
2. teases 2
3. likes 1
4. rushes 2
5. faces 2
6. dines 1

7. misses 2
8. tames 1
9. scares 1
10. passes 2
11. pinches 2
12. wades 1

6. Change the following affirmative statements into questions. For example:

She walks to work. Does she walk to work?

They take the bus. Do they take the bus?

1. I hurry home.
2. He drives a truck.
3. You follow the news.
4. They want a pet.
5. She likes flowers.
6. We need tea.
7. She answers the questions.
8. He drinks coffee.
9. I learn quickly.
10. It rains heavily.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. Do I hurry home?
2. Does he drive a truck?
3. Do you follow the news?
4. Do they want a pet?
5. Does she like flowers?
6. Do we need tea?
7. Does she answer the questions?
8. Does he drink coffee?
9. Do I learn quickly?
10. Does it rain heavily?

7. Change the affirmative statements given in Exercise 6 into negative statements. For example:

She walks to work. She does not walk to work.

They take the bus. They do not take the bus.

Answers to exercise 7:

1. I do not hurry home.
2. He does not drive a truck.
3. You do not follow the news.
4. They do not want a pet.
5. She does not like flowers.
6. We do not need tea.
7. She does not answer the questions.
8. He does not drink coffee.
9. I do not learn quickly.
10. It does not rain heavily.

8. Change the affirmative statements given in Exercise 6 into negative questions. Give both the forms without contractions, and the forms with contractions. For example:

She walks to work. Does she not walk to work?
Doesn't she walk to work? They take the bus.
Do they not take the bus? Don't they take the bus?

Answers to exercise 8:

1. Do I not hurry home? Don't I hurry home?
2. Does he not drive a truck? Doesn't he drive a truck?
3. Do you not follow the news? Don't you follows the news?
4. Do they not want a pet? Don't they want a pet?
5. Does she not like flowers? Doesn't she like flowers?
6. Do we not need tea? Don't we need tea?
7. Does she not answer the questions? Doesn't she answer the questions?
8. Does he not drink coffee? Doesn't he drink coffee?
9. Do I not learn quickly? Don't I learn quickly?
10. Does it not rain heavily? Doesn't it rain heavily?

9. Add negative tag questions to the affirmative statements given in Exercise 6. Use contractions for the tag questions. For example:

She walks to work. She walks to work, doesn't she?
They take the bus. They take the bus, don't they?

Answers to exercise 9:

1. I hurry home, don't I?

2. He drives a truck, doesn't he?
3. You follow the news, don't you?
4. They want a pet, don't they?
5. She likes flowers, doesn't she?
6. We need tea, don't we?
7. She answers the questions, doesn't she?
8. He drinks coffee, doesn't he?
9. I learn quickly, don't I?
10. It rains heavily, doesn't it?

(3) The present continuous

EXERCISES for Chapter (3)

1. Using the Present Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

He .... hard. (to work)

He is working hard.

We .... anxious. (to feel)

We are feeling anxious.

1. I .... the questions. (to answer)
2. You .... boots. (to wear)
3. We .... for work. (to look)
4. She .... her friend. (to call)
5. He .... a house. (to build)
6. They .... supper. (to cook)
7. We .... a story. (to tell)
8. You .... for the bus. (to wait)
9. I .... a book. (to read)
10. They .... berries. (to pick)

Answers to exercise 1:

1. am answering
2. are wearing
3. are looking
4. is calling
5. is building
6. are cooking
7. are telling
8. are waiting
9. am reading
10. are picking

2. Using the Present Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

They .... the lemons. (to squeeze)

They are squeezing the lemons.

It .... on the sidewalk. (to lie)

It is lying on the sidewalk.

I .... the groceries. (to carry)

I am carrying the groceries.

1. She .... a letter. (to write)
2. They .... about it. (to worry)
3. He .... jam. (to make)
4. It .... (to die)
5. We .... to school. (to hurry)
6. She .... us to do it. (to dare)
7. You .... on the blanket. (to lie)
8. He .... the problem. (to solve)
9. I .... now. (to leave)
10. They .... to help us. (to try)

answers for exercise 2:

1. is writing
2. are worrying
3. is making
4. is dying
5. are hurrying
6. is daring
7. are lying
8. is solving
9. am leaving
10. are trying

3. Using the Present Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

We .... to come. (to plan)

We are planning to come.

They .... the lawn. (to mow)

They are mowing the lawn.

It .... (to rain)

It is raining.

1. I .... the grass. (to cut)
2. It .... downstream. (to float)

3. They .... the game. (to win)
4. We .... the present. (to wrap)
5. She .... lettuce. (to grow)
6. He .... for us. (to look)
7. I .... a sweater. (to knit)
8. They .... wood. (to saw)
9. She .... the windows. (to clean)
10. We .... the floor. (to scrub)
11. I .... the toaster. (to fix)
12. He .... his coffee. (to sip)
13. They .... the hedge. (to trim)
14. You .... the ducks. (to feed)
15. She .... her head. (to nod)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. am cutting
2. is floating
3. are winning
4. are wrapping
5. is growing
6. is looking
7. am knitting
8. are sawing
9. is cleaning
10. are scrubbing
11. am fixing
12. is sipping
13. are trimming
14. are feeding
15. is nodding

4. Each of the following sentences is preceded by a bare infinitive, the most heavily stressed syllable of which is underlined. Paying attention to whether or not the final consonant should be doubled before ing is added, fill in the blanks with the present participles corresponding to the bare infinitives. Use the American spelling for verbs ending in l. For example:

whisper: They are .... to their friends.

They are whispering to their friends.

refer: I was .... to your letter.

I was referring to your letter.

1. open: I am .... the door.
2. display: She is .... her talents.
3. submit: He is .... his report tomorrow.
4. limit: The store is .... the number of items on ale.
5. permit: We are not .... him to go.
6. sharpen: They are .... the pencils.
7. confer: She is .... with her colleagues.
8. focus: He is .... the camera.
9. repel: They are .... the attack.
10. shovel: I am .... the steps.
11. destroy: Hail is .... the crops.
12. dispel: They are .... our doubts.
13. squander: He is .... his money.
14. prefer: We are .... our new school to the old one.
15. color: The child is .... the picture.
16. unravel: We are .... the wool.
17. propel: Jet engines are .... the plane.
18. flower: The pansies are...
19. infer: They are .... that we do not want to come.
20. listen: The children are .... to us.

Answers to exercise 4:

1. opening
2. displaying
3. submitting
4. limiting
5. permitting
6. sharpening
7. conferring
8. focusing
9. repelling
10. shoveling
11. destroying
12. dispelling

13. squandering
14. preferring
15. coloring
16. unraveling
17. propelling
18. flowering
19. inferring
20. listening.

5. Change the following affirmative statements into questions. For example:
It is snowing.
Is it snowing?
They are being cautious.
Are they being cautious?

1. I am learning English.
2. You are carrying a parcel.
3. It is growing colder.
4. We are living in Halifax.
5. They are running a race.
6. He is drinking coffee.
7. She is shopping for presents.
8. I am cleaning the window.
9. We are buying pencils.
10. They are playing football.

Answers to exercise 5:

1. Am I learning English?
2. Are you carrying a parcel?
3. Is it growing colder?
4. Are we living in Halifax?
5. Are they running a race?
6. Is he drinking coffee?
7. Is she shopping for presents?
8. Am I cleaning the window?
9. Are we buying pencils?
10. Are they playing football?

6. Change the affirmative statements given in Exercise 5 into negative statements. For example:

It is snowing.

It is not snowing.

They are being cautious.

They are not being cautious.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. I am not learning English.
2. You are not carrying a parcel.
3. It is not growing colder.
4. We are not living in Halifax.
5. They are not running a race.
6. He is not drinking coffee.
7. She is not shopping for presents.
8. I am not cleaning the window.
9. We are not buying pencils.
10. They are not playing football.

7. Change the affirmative statements given in Exercise 5 into negative questions. Except when the subject of the verb is I, write both the form without contractions and the form with contractions. For example:

It is snowing.

Is it not snowing?

Isn't it snowing?

They are being cautious.

Are they not being cautious?

Aren't they being cautious?

Answers to exercise 7:

1. Am I not learning English?
2. Are you not carrying a parcel? Aren't you carrying a parcel?
3. Is it not growing colder? Isn't it growing colder?
4. Are we not living in Halifax? Aren't we living in Halifax?
5. Are they not running a race? Aren't they running a race?
6. Is he not drinking coffee? Isn't he drinking coffee?
7. Is she not shopping for presents? Isn't she shopping for presents?
8. Am I not cleaning the window?
9. Are we not buying pencils? Aren't we buying pencils?

10. Are they not playing football? Aren't they playing football?

8. Add negative tag questions to the affirmative statements given in Exercise 5. Except when the subject of the verb is I, use contractions for the tag questions. For example:

It is snowing.

It is snowing, isn't it?

They are being cautious.

They are being cautious, aren't they?

Answers to exercise 8:

1. am learning English, am I not?
2. You are carrying a parcel, aren't you?
3. It is growing colder, isn't it?
4. We are living in Halifax, aren't we?
5. They are running a race, aren't they?
6. He is drinking coffee, isn't he?
7. She is shopping for presents, isn't she?
8. I am cleaning the window, am I not?
9. We are buying pencils, aren't we?
10. They are playing football, aren't they?

9. For each of the following sentences, determine whether the Simple Present tense or the Present Continuous tense is more appropriate, and fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb given in brackets. For example:

Right now, he .... ridiculous. (to be)

Right now, he is being ridiculous.

She .... to Sydney every weekend. (to drive)

She drives to Sydney every weekend.

1. At the moment, I .... supper. (to cook)
2. He .... the paper every weekday. (to read)
3. We .... right now. (to study)
4. She .... every day. (to study)
5. Now it .... (to rain)
6. They .... to Mexico every year. (to travel)
7. Just now we .... the shopping. (to do)
8. She always .... correctly.(to answer)
9. You .... never late. (to be)
10. Now I .... to the radio. (to listen)

11. Each Sunday, we .... the flea market. (to visit)
12. At present, I .... for work. (to look)

Answers to exercise 9:

1. am cooking
2. reads
3. are studying
4. studies
5. is raining
6. travel
7. are doing
8. answers
9. are
10. am listening
11. visit
12. am looking

(4) The present perfect and the present perfect continuous

EXERCISES for Chapter (4)

1. Using the Present Perfect tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

We .... the contest. (to enter)

We <u>have entered</u> the contest.

He .... the work. (to finish)

He <u>has finished</u> the work.

1. They .... a pizza. (to order)
2. It .... to rain. (to start)
3. You .... the question. (to answer)
4. I .... the eggs. (to cook)
5. We .... the sauce. (to heat)
6. He .... the room. (to clean)
7. She .... the car. (to start)
8. They .... on the door. (to knock)
9. You .... on the lights. (to turn)
10. She .... them to come. (to ask)

Answers to exercise 1:

1. have ordered
2. has started
3. have answered
4. have cooked
5. have heated
6. has cleaned
7. has started
8. have knocked
9. have turned
10. has asked

2. Rewrite the following sentences, using the contracted form of the auxiliary <u>to have</u>. For example:

It has started.

It's started.

We have telephoned.

We've telephoned.

1. I have agreed.
2. You have moved.
3. He has looked.
4. We have argued.
5. They have explained.
6. You have waited.
7. She has answered.
8. We have finished.
9. It has cooled.
10. I have ordered.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. I've agreed.
2. You've moved.
3. He's looked.
4. We've argued.
5. They've explained.
6. You've waited.
7. She's answered.
8. We've finished.
9. It's cooled.
10. I've ordered.

3. Paying attention to the spelling of the past participles, fill in the blanks using the Present Perfect tense of the regular verbs shown in brackets. For example:

She .... hard. (to try)

She <u>has tried</u> hard.

He .... his friend. (to annoy)

He <u>has annoyed</u> his friend.

1. We .... them. (to envy)
2. She .... the clarinet for five years. (to play)
3. You .... for the job. (to apply)

4. We .... the eggs. (to fry)
5. hey .... six people. (to employ)
6. He .... the wall with paint. (to spray)
7. I .... home. (to hurry)
8. They .... unusual intelligence. (to display)
9. It .... our chances. (to destroy)
10. You .... on your bicycle. (to rely)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. have envied
2. has played
3. have applied
4. have fried
5. have employed
6. has sprayed
7. have hurried
8. have displayed
9. has destroyed
10. have relied

4. Paying attention to the spelling of the past participles, fill in the blanks using the Present Perfect tense of the regular verbs shown in brackets. For example:

He .... the child. (to scare)

He has scared the child.

They .... the hillside. (to scar)

They have scarred the hillside.

1. She .... (to apologize)
2. I .... the soup. (to stir)
3. It .... (to stop)
4. We .... what happened. (to explain)
5. They .... a concert. (to plan)
6. You .... the table. (to wipe)
7. We .... our hopes on you. (to pin)
8. She .... the choir. (to join)
9. They ....an eagle. (to spot)
10. It ....every day. (to rain)

11. You .... the cream. (to whip)
12. She .... everything. (to arrange)

Answers to exercise 4:

1. has apologized
2. have stirred
3. has stopped
4. have explained
5. have planned
6. have wiped
7. have pinned
8. has joined
9. have spotted
10. has rained
11. have whipped
12. has arranged

5. Keeping in mind that the ending ed forms a separate syllable only when it follows the letter d or t, indicate the number of syllables in each of the following past participles. Read each of the the past participles aloud. For example:

.... pained 1 pained .... painted 2 painted

1. …….waited
2. …….wailed
3. …….pinned
4. …….printed
5. …….acted
6. …….added
7. …….wanted
8. …….warned
9. …….raced
10. …….rated
11. …….joined
12. …….jumped
13. …….folded
14. …….frowned
15. …….passed
16. …….patted

17. …….raided
18. …….rained
19. …….stared
20. …….started

Answers to exercise 5:

1. 2 2. 1 3. 1 4. 2 5. 2 6. 2 7. 2 8. 1 9. 1 10. 2 11. 1 12. 1
13. 2 14. 1 15. 1 16. 2 17. 2 18. 1 19. 1 20. 2

6. Referring to the table of irregular verbs if necessary, fill in the blanks with the Present Perfect tense of the irregular verbs shown in brackets. For example:

They .... tall. (to grow)

They have grown tall.

He .... it. (to choose)

He has chosen it.

1. We .... lunch. (to eat)
2. I .... the floor. (to sweep)
3. She .... in a choir. (to sing)
4. They .... to work. (to go)
5. You .... your way. (to lose)
6. He .... earlier than usual. (to rise)
7. We .... to everyone. (to speak)
8. I .... the kingfisher. (to see)
9. They .... each other a long time. (to know)
10. She .... here from France. (to fly)
11. He .... very helpful. (to be)
12. I .... the blue cloth. (to cut)
13. We .... two letters. (to write)
14. They .... the competition. (to win)
15. She .... no one. (to tell)
16. It .... a long time. (to take)
17. You .... to do it. (to forget)
18. I .... it. (to hear)
19. They .... town. (to leave)
20. He .... the problem. (to understand)

Answers to exercise 6:

1. have eaten
2. have swept
3. has sung
4. have gone
5. have lost
6. has risen
7. have spoken
8. have seen
9. have known
10. has flown
11. has been
12. have cut
13. have written
14. have won
15. has told
16. has taken
17. have forgotten
18. have heard
19. have left
20. has understood

7. Following the model of the examples, rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

I have read this book.

Have I read this book?

I have not read this book.

Have I not read this book?

Haven't I read this book?

I have read this book, haven't I?

He has found the answer.

Has he found the answer?

He has not found the answer.

Has he not found the answer?

Hasn't he found the answer?

He has found the answer, hasn't he?

1. They have eaten the cookies.
2. She has told the truth.
3. He has run fast.
4. We have watered the plants.
5. You have hurried.

Answers to exercise 7:

1. Have they eaten the cookies? They have not eaten the cookies. Have they not eaten the cookies? Haven't they eaten the cookies? They have eaten the cookies, haven't they?
2. Has she told the truth? She has not told the truth. Has she not told the truth? Hasn't she told the truth? She has told the truth, hasn't she?
3. Has he run fast? He has not run fast. Has he not run fast? Hasn't he run fast? He has run fast, hasn't he?
4. Have we watered the plants? We have not watered the plants. Have we not watered the plants? Haven't we watered the plants? We have watered the plants, haven't we?
5. Have you hurried? You have not hurried. Have you not hurried? Haven't you hurried? You have hurried, haven't you?

8. Paying attention to the spelling of the present participles, fill in the blanks using the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

I .... all night. (to work)

I <u>have been working</u> all night.

She .... the trumpet. (to practise)

She <u>has been practising</u> the trumpet.

1. We .... for you. (to wait)
2. They .... a race. (to run)
3. He .... a book. (to read)
4. You .... a letter. (to write)
5. I .... the table. (to set)
6. It .... for hours. (to rain)
7. We ....here for three years. (to live)
8. She .... to us. (to speak)
9. You ....presents. (to buy)

10. They .... a trip. (to plan)

Answers to exercise 8:

1. have been waiting
2. have been running
3. has been reading
4. have been writing
5. have been setting
6. has been raining
7. have been living
8. has been speaking
9. have been buying
10. have been planning

9. Following the model of the example, rewrite the following two affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

They have been enjoying themselves.

Have they been enjoying themselves?

They have not been enjoying themselves.

Have they not been enjoying themselves?

Haven't they been enjoying themselves?

They have been enjoying themselves, haven't they?

1. It has been snowing.
2. You have been visiting your friends.

Answers to exercise 9:

1. Has it been snowing? It has not been snowing. Has it not been snowing? Hasn't it been snowing? It has been snowing, hasn't it?
2. Have you been visiting your friends? You have not been visiting your friends. Have you not been visiting your friends? Haven't you been visiting your friends? You have been visiting your friends, haven't you?

(5) The simple past

EXERCISES for Chapter (5)

1. Using the Simple Past tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verb to be. For example:

I ………………………..... calm. I was calm.

You .... right. You were right.

1. He .... happy.
2. We .... students.
3. They .... ambitious.
4. You .... clever.
5. It .... hot.
6. I .... busy.
7. We .... patient.
8. She .... eleven years old.
9. hey .... intelligent.
10. He .... in a hurry.

Answers to exercise 1:

1. was
2. were
3. were
4. were
5. was
6. was
7. were
8. was
9. were
10. was

2. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

You were on time. Were you on time?

You were not on time. Were you not on time?

Weren't you on time? You were on time, weren't you?

It was warm enough. Was it warm enough?
It was not warm enough. Was it not warm enough?
Wasn't it warm enough? It was warm enough, wasn't it?

1. I was late.
2. They were in a hurry.
3. He was an artist.
4. We were right.
5. She was there.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. Was I late? I was not late. Was I not late? Wasn't I late? I was late, wasn't I?
2. Were they in a hurry? They were not in a hurry. Were they not in a hurry? Weren't they In a hurry? They were in a hurry, weren't they?
3. Was he an artist? He was not an artist. Was he not an artist? Wasn't he an artist? He was an artist, wasn't he?
4. Were we right? We were not right. Were we not right? Weren't we right? We were right, weren't we?
5. Was she there? She was not there. Was she not there? Wasn't she there? She was there, wasn't she?

3. Paying attention to the correct spelling, fill in the blanks with the Simple Past of the regular verbs shown in brackets. For example:

It .... raining. (to stop) It stopped raining.
I .... myself. (to disguise) I disguised myself.

1. She .... through the book. (to flip)
2. We .... the traffic. (to watch)
3. You .... the flowers carefully. (to arrange)
4. He .... about his success. (to brag)
5. They .... sightseeing. (to enjoy)
6. He .... us with pencils. (to supply)
7. I .... the child. (to reassure)
8. We .... for them. (to wait)
9. They .... the books overseas. (to ship)
10. She .... too much. (to worry)

Answers to exercise :3

1. flipped
2. watched
3. arranged
4. bragged
5. enjoyed
6. supplied
7. reassured
8. waited
9. shipped
10. worried

4. Referring to the table of English irregular verbs if necessary, fill in the blanks with the Simple Past tense of the irregular verbs shown in brackets. For example:

They .... a song. (to write) They wrote a song.

We .... the floor. (to sweep) We swept the floor.

1. She .... the dishes. (to do)
2. They .... for a walk. (to go)
3. He .... his time. (to take)
4. I .... the beds. (to make)
5. They .... to catch the bus. (to run)
6. She .... up quickly. (to get)
7. You .... the coffee. (to drink)
8. We .... soundly. (to sleep)
9. He .... his books. (to forget)
10. I .... the house. (to leave)

Answers to exercise 4:

1. did
2. went
3. took
4. made
5. ran
6. got
7. drank
8. slept

9. forgot
10. left

5. Paying attention to the correct forms of the bare infinitives, change the following affirmative statements into questions. For example:

He lifted the suitcase. Did he lift the suitcase?

I paid the rent. Did I pay the rent?

1. She hurried to school.
2. They carried the parcels.
3. You closed the door.
4. I plugged in the lamp.
5. They planned the party.
6. We taught the class.
7. She told a story.
8. They struck a bargain.
9. He met his friends.
10. I shook hands.

Answers to exercise 5:

1. Did she hurry to school?
2. Did they carry the parcels?
3. Did you close the door?
4. Did I plug in the lamp?
5. Did they plan the party?
6. Did we teach the class?
7. Did she tell a story?
8. Did they strike a bargain?
9. Did he meet his friends?
10. Did I shake hands?

6. Paying attention to the correct forms of the bare infinitives, change the following affirmative statements into negative statements. For example:

I scanned the newspaper. I did not scan the newspaper.

They flew to Toronto. They did not fly to Toronto.

1. We enjoyed ourselves.
2. She pinned on the brooch.
3. I fanned myself.
4. They emptied their pockets.

5. You replied at once.
6. He went to work.
7. We swam across the river.
8. They took the bus.
9. I shut the windows.
10. You ran fast.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. We did not enjoy ourselves.
2. She did not pin on the brooch.
3. I did not fan myself.
4. They did not empty their pockets.
5. You did not reply at once.
6. He did not go to work.
7. We did not swim across the river.
8. They did not take the bus.
9. I did not shut the windows.
10. You did not run fast.

7. Paying attention to the correct forms of the bare infinitives, change the following affirmative statements into negative questions. Give both the forms without contractions and the forms with contractions. For example:

You walked quickly. Did you not walk quickly?
Didn't you walk quickly? He burst the balloon.
Did he not burst the balloon? Didn't he burst the balloon?

1. You watched the game.
2. I climbed the ladder.
3. We pleased the visitors.
4. They canned the peaches.
5. He received the letter.
6. You saw the fireworks.
7. It cost five dollars.
8. She hit the ball.
9. He did his homework.
10. They cut the ribbon.

Answers to exercise 7:

1. Did you not watch the game? Didn't you watch the game?

2. Did I not climb the ladder? Didn't I climb the ladder?
3. Did we not please the visitors? Didn't we please the visitors?
4. Did they not can the peaches? Didn't they can the peaches?
5. Did he not receive the letter? Didn't he receive the letter?
6. Did you not see the fireworks? Didn't you see the fireworks?
7. Did it not cost five dollars? Didn't it cost five dollars?
8. Did she not hit the ball? Didn't she hit the ball?
9. Did he not do his homework? Didn't he do his homework?
10. Did they not cut the ribbon? Didn't they cut the ribbon?

8. Rewrite the following sentences, changing the underlined verbs from the Simple Past to the form with <u>used</u> followed by the infinitive. For example:

They <u>took</u> the bus. They used to take the bus.

She <u>traveled</u> every year. She used to travel every year.

1. It <u>snowed</u> heavily.
2. I <u>came</u> often.
3. We <u>were</u> neighbors.
4. He <u>wrote</u> many letters.
5. They <u>walked</u> to work.
6. He <u>teased</u> us.
7. She <u>told</u> us stories.
8. You <u>rode</u> a bicycle.

Answers to exercise 8:

1. It used to snow heavily.
2. I used to come often.
3. We used to be neighbors.
4. He used to write many letters.
5. They used to walk to work.
6. He used to tease us.
7. She used to tell us stories.
8. You used to ride a bicycle.

(6) The past continuous, the past perfect and the past perfect continuous

EXERCISES for Chapter (6)

1. Using the Past Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

I .... a salad. (to make)

I <u>was making</u> a salad.

They .... to find some boots. (to try)

They <u>were trying</u> to find some boots.

1. He .... a book. (to read)
2. We .... money. (to save)
3. She .... school. (to attend)
4. It .... (to thunder)
5. They .... for the exam. (to study)
6. We .... ourselves. (to sun)
7. They .... they way. (to lead)
8. You .... by bus. (to leave)
9. We .... through the snow. (to plod)
10. You .... your goals. (to attain

Answers to exercise 1:

1. was reading
2. were saving
3. was attending
4. was thundering
5. were studying
6. were sunning
7. were leading
8. were leaving
9. were plodding
10. were attaining

2. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

You were learning French.

Were you learning French?

You were not learning French.

Were you not learning French?

Weren't you learning French?

You were learning French, weren't you?

1. We were starting a business.
2. She was waiting outside.
3. He was singing.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. Were we starting a business? We were not starting a business. Were we not starting a business? Weren't we starting a business? We were starting a business, weren't we?
2. Was she waiting outside? She was not waiting outside. Was she not waiting outside? Wasn't she waiting outside? She was waiting outside, wasn't she?
3. Was he singing? He was not singing. Was he not singing? Wasn't he singing? He was singing, wasn't he?

3. Using the Past Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

.... you .... last night? (to work)

Were you working last night?

It ………..... not .... (to rain)

It was not raining.

They .... home. (to hurry)

They were hurrying home.

1. We .... for the test. (to prepare)
2. ....she .... notes? (to take)
3. I .... not .... long. (to wait)
4. They .... at Woolco. (to shop)
5. ....it not .... outside? (to freeze)
6. She .... on Almond Street last year. (to live)

7. ....you ....supper when the phone rang? (to eat)
8. He ....asleep by the time the lesson ended. (to fall)
9. ....we not .... the next chapter? (to discuss)
10. They ....their books away, when their friends arrived. (to put)
11. You .... not ....the news. (to follow)
12. ....I .... too much noise? (to make)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. were preparing
2. Was, taking
3. was, waiting
4. were shopping
5. Was, freezing
6. was living
7. Were, eating
8. was falling
9. Were, discussing
10. were putting
11. were, following
12. Was, making

4. Using the Past Perfect tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

I .... the parcel. (to open)

I had opened the parcel.

They .... to the opera. (to be)

They had been to the opera.

1. She .... a sweater. (to buy)
2. He .... to work. (to start)
3. You .... the message. (to understand)
4. We .... the appointment. (to forget)
5. They .... us. (to convince)
6. She .... the book. (to find)
7. He .... the envelope. (to tear)
8. You .... your breakfast. (to finish)

9. We .... to school. (to go)
10. They .... the beds. (to make)

Answers to exercise 4:

1. had bought
2. had started
3. had understood
4. had forgotten
5. had convinced
6. had found
7. had torn
8. had finished
9. had gone
10. had made

5. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

He had attended the concert.

Had he attended the concert?

He had not attended the concert.

Had he not attended the concert?

Hadn't he attended the concert?

He had attended the concert, hadn't he?

1. You had entered the contest.
2. I had wanted to come.
3. We had arrived on time.

Answers to exercise 5:

1. Had you entered the contest? You had not entered the contest. Had you not entered the contest? Hadn't you entered the contest? You had entered the contest, hadn't you?
2. Had I wanted to come? I had not wanted to come. Had I not wanted to come? Hadn't I wanted to come? I had wanted to come, hadn't I?
3. Had we arrived on time? We had not arrived on time. Had we not arrived on time? Hadn't we arrived on time? We had arrived on time, hadn't we?

6. Using the Past Perfect tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

He .... hard. (to practise)

He had practised hard.

………... they .... a good job? (to do)

Had they done a good job?

I ………... not ………….…... the news. (to hear)

I had not heard the news.

1. You .... it carefully.(to consider)
2. She .... her way in the woods. (to lose)
3. he not .... his hands? (to wash)
4. they .... the letter? (to read)
5. I ……... not .... the words. (to forget)
6. We .... to come even before we received the letter. (to decide)
7. he not .... everything well? (to organize)
8. They .... not .... a holiday in a long time. (to have)
9. She .... to talk to us. (to stop)
10. He ………... not yet .... (to arrive)
11. you .... to meet him? (to plan)
12. I ………... not .... her for a long time. (to see)

Answers to exercise 6:

1. had considered
2. had lost
3. Had, washed
4. Had, read
5. had, forgotten
6. had decided
7. Had, organized
8. had, had
9. had stopped
10. had, arrived
11. Had, planned
12. had, seen

7. Using the Past Perfect Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

We .... for an apartment. (to search)

We <u>had been searching</u> for an apartment.

She .... extra courses. (to take)

She <u>had been taking</u> extra courses.

1. We .... the grass. (to cut)
2. You ....at the photographs. (to look)
3. They .... you the letters. (to give)
4. He .... for us. (to wait)
5. She .... a business. (to run)
6. It .... all night. (to rain)
7. We .... them. (to encourage)
8. You .... on the beach. (to lie)
9. They .... the sauce. (to taste)
10. He .... behind. (to lag)

Answers to exercise 7:

1. had been cutting
2. had been looking
3. had been giving
4. had been waiting
5. had been running
6. had been raining
7. had been encouraging
8. had been lying
9. had been tasting
10. had been lagging

8. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

She had been keeping a diary.

Had she been keeping a diary?

She had not been keeping a diary.

Had she not been keeping a diary?

Hadn't she been keeping a diary?

She had been keeping a diary, hadn't she?

1. We had been raking the leaves.

2. You had been visiting your cousins.
3. They had been swimming in the lake.

Answers to exercise 8:

1. Had we been raking the leaves? We had not been raking the leaves. Had we not been raking the leaves? Hadn't we been raking the leaves? We had been raking the leaves, hadn't we?
2. Had you been visiting your cousins? You had not been visiting your cousins. Had you not been visiting your cousins? Hadn't you been visiting your cousins? You had been visiting your cousins, hadn't you?
3. Had they been swimming in the lake? They had not been swimming in the lake. Had they not been swimming in the lake? Hadn't they been swimming in the lake? They had been swimming in the lake, hadn't they?

9. Using the Past Perfect Continuous tense, fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

We .... (to argue)

We had been arguing.

.... he .... well? (to feel)

Had he been feeling well?

I ……….. not .... much walking. (to do)

I had not been doing much walking.

1. You .... the stove. (to clean)
2. She ..... not .... regularly. (to come)
3. they not .... on you? (to count)
4. We .... for shoes. (to look)
5. it not .... that day? (to snow)
6. I .... for groceries. (to shop)
7. he not .... to the news? (to listen)
8. They ..... not .... to drive far. (to intend)
9. we .... on time? (to leave)
10. you .... that? (to expect)
11. They ....television. (to watch)
12. He .... not .... long when the bus arrived. (to wait)

Answers to exercise 9:

1. had been cleaning
2. had/been coming
3. Had/been counting
4. had been looking
5. Had/been snowing
6. had been shopping
7. Had/ been listening
8. had/been intending
9. Had/been leaving
10. Had/ been expecting
11. had been watching
12. had/been waiting

10. For each of the following sentences, paying attention to whether the underlined auxiliary is a form of to be, to do or to have, fill in the blank with the bare infinitive, present participle, or past participle of the verb given in brackets, as appropriate. Refer if necessary to the table summarizing the formation of the English present and past tenses. For example:

He was .... medicine. (to study)

He was studying medicine.

You have .... the food. (to bring)

You have brought the food.

We had been .... a long time. (to wait)

We had been waiting a long time.

Does she .... classical music? (to like)

Does she like classical music?

1. She was .... a picture. (to draw)
2. We have .... our homework. (to finish)
3. I have been .... for an opportunity. (to wait)
4. Do you .... a bicycle? (to own)
5. We are .... coffee. (to drink)
6. Did he .... the book? (to enjoy)
7. They were .... us. (to expect)
8. You had .... a job. (to find)
9. He is .... the truth. (to tell)
10. It had been .... all morning. (to snow)
11. We had .... the window. (to open)

12. I <u>am</u> .... potatoes. (to peel)
13. You <u>did</u> not .... my letter. (to answer)
14. It <u>does</u> not .... (to matter)
15. I <u>have</u> .... this movie before. (to see)

Answers to exercise 10:

1. drawing
2. finished
3. waiting
4. own
5. drinking
6. enjoy
7. expecting
8. found
9. telling
10. snowing
11. opened
12. peeling
13. answer
14. matter
15. seen

11. Make the following statements emphatic. For example:

He likes cats.

He <u>does</u> like cats.

You have finished.

You <u>have</u> finished.

They were here.

They <u>were</u> here.

We are not ready.

We are <u>not</u> ready.

1. I enjoy reading.
2. They do not like music.
3. It snowed.
4. I have found my pen.
5. She cooks well.
6. You were listening to the radio.

7. They found the answer.
8. He was right.
9. She understands.
10. They had locked the door.
11. He did not arrive late.
12. You ran fast.

Answers to exercise 11:

1. I do enjoy reading.
2. They do not like music.
3. It did snow.
4. I have found my pen.
5. She does cook well.
6. You were listening to the radio.
7. They did find the answer.
8. He was right.
9. She does understand.
10. They had locked the door.
11. He did not arrive late.
12. You did run fast.

(7) The future tenses

EXERCISES for Chapter (7)

1. Using either the auxiliary shall or the auxiliary will for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Simple Future of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

I .... (to agree) — I shall agree or I will agree.

You .... the results. (to publish) — You will publish the results.

1. We .... (to succeed)
2. They .... the site. (to excavate)
3. He .... the situation. (to study)
4. We .... (to hurry)
5. I .... soon. (to follow)
6. It .... a surprise. (to be)
7. He .... us. (to remind)
8. She .... tomorrow. (to depart)
9. I .... here. (to remain)
10. They .... university. (to enter)

Answers to exercise 1:

1. shall succeed or will succeed
2. will excavate
3. will study
4. shall hurry or will hurry
5. shall follow or will follow
6. will be
7. will remind
8. will depart
9. shall remain or will remain
10. will enter

2. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

She will notice us. — Will she notice us?

She will not notice us. Will she not notice us?
Won't she notice us? She will notice us, won't she?

1. You will wash the windows.
2. They will help you.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. Will you wash the windows? You will not wash the windows. Will you not wash the windows? Won't you wash the windows? You will wash the windows, won't you?
2. Will they help you? They will not help you. Will they not help you? Won't they help you? They will help you, won't they?

3. Using either the auxiliary shall or the auxiliary will for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Simple Future of the verbs shown in brackets. Use shall in the first person for questions in which a request for permission is implied. For example:

I .... out soon. (to go)

I shall go out soon. or I will go out soon.

.... we ………... now? (to leave)

Shall we leave now?

.... they .... France? (to visit)

Will they visit France?

It .... not .... long. (to take)

It will not take long.

1. We .... you at the museum. (to meet)
2. ....you .... me a pen? (to lend)
3. ....hey not .... the competition? (to win)
4. She .... not .... to come. (to forget)
5. ....he not .... the boat? (to sail)
6. You .... the expedition. (to enjoy)
7. ....I .... this? (to order)
8. ....you not .... for me? (to wait)
9. We .... not .... late. (to be)
10. He .... us the news. (to send)
11. I .... not .... my way. (to lose)
12. ....they .... the program? (to watch)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. shall meet or will meet

2. Will, lend
3. Will, win
4. will, forget
5. Will, sail
6. will enjoy
7. Shall, order
8. Will, wait
9. shall or will, be
10. will send
11. shall or will, lose
12. Will, watch

4. Using the Simple conjugation which expresses determination and compulsion, fill in the blanks with the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

We .... the exam. (to pass)

We will pass the exam.

You .... the work on time. (to finish)

You shall finish the work on time.

1. They .... the tickets. (to buy)
2. I .... home. (to go)
3. He .... our guide. (to be)
4. You .... with me. (to come)
5. I .... it. (to remember)
6. She .... us. (to call)
7. We .... the money. (to earn)
8. They .... us. (to respect)
9. I .... you. (to help)
10. It .... not .... us. (to hinder)
11. We .... it. (to find)
12. You .... not .... it. (to regret)

Answers to exercise 4:

1. shall buy
2. will go
3. shall be
4. shall come
5. will remember

6. shall call
7. will earn
8. shall respect
9. will help
10. shall, hinder
11. will find
12. shall, regret

5. The following sentences refer to future events. Complete each sentence by filling in the blank with the correct form of the Present Continuous tense of to go, followed by the infinitive of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

She .... swimming. (to teach)

She is going to teach swimming.

…….. we .... home? (to walk)

Are we going to walk home?

He .... not .... us. (to find)

He is not going to find us.

1. he .... horseback riding? (to learn)
2. I ....the windows. (to wash)
3. you .... with us? (to come)
4. It .... not ....cold tonight. (to be)
5. he not ....the letter? (to answer)
6. We ....to the library. (to go)
7. she ....a sweater? (to buy)
8. you not .... us? (to call)
9. I .... not ....late. (to stay)
10. They ....supper. (to cook)

Answers to exercise 5:

1. Is, going to learn
2. am going to wash
3. Are, going to come
4. is, going to be
5. Is, going to answer
6. are going to go
7. Is, going to buy
8. Are, going to call

9. am, going to stay
10. are going to cook

6. Using either the auxiliary <u>shall</u> or the auxiliary <u>will</u> for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Future Continuous of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

We .... you tomorrow. (to see)

We <u>shall be seeing</u> you tomorrow. <u>or</u> We <u>will be seeing</u> you tomorrow.

He .... school next year. (to attend)

He <u>will be attending</u> school next year.

1. You .... with us. (to come)
2. It .... warmer. (to grow)
3. They .... new furniture. (to buy)
4. She .... the clock. (to watch)
5. I .... downtown. (to go)
6. You .... the cake. (to cut)
7. They .... the newspaper. (to read)
8. We .... the museum. (to visit)

Answers to exercise 6:

1. will be coming
2. will be growing
3. will be buying
4. will be watching
5. shall be going or will be going
6. will be cutting
7. will be reading
8. shall be visiting or will

7. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

They will be serving the dessert.

Will they be serving the dessert?

They will not be serving the dessert

Will they not be serving the dessert?

Won't they be serving the dessert?

They will be serving the dessert, won't they?

1. He will be needing this.
2. They will be living here.

Answers to exercise 7:

1. Will he be needing this?
   He will not be needing this.
   Will he not be needing this?
   Won't he be needing this?
   He will be needing this, won't he?
2. Will they be living here?
   They will not be living here.
   Will they not be living here?
   Won't they be living here?
   They will be living here, won't they?

8. Using either the auxiliary shall or the auxiliary will for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Future Continuous of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

I .... soon. (to leave)

I shall be leaving soon. or I will be leaving soon.

.... you .... coffee? (to make)

Will you be making coffee?

He .... not .... the bus. (to use)

He will not be using the bus.

1. He .... a new language. (to learn)
2. ....she .... help? (to need)
3. ....you not ....your jacket? (to mend)
4. He .... not .... here. (to stay)
5. ....we not ....them a card? (to mail)
6. They .... the telephone. (to answer)
7. ....you .... downtown? (to go)
8. I ..... not .... at the school. (to stop)
9. ....she not .... a trip? (to plan)
10. I .... the arrangements. (to make)
11. They .... not ....tired. (to feel)
12. ....we ....at the library? (to meet)

Answers to exercise 8:

1. will be learning
2. Will, be needing
3. Will, be mending
4. will, be staying
5. Shall or Will, be mailing
6. will be answering
7. Will, be going
8. shall or will, be stopping
9. Will, be planning
10. shall be making or will be making
11. will, be feeling
12. Shall or Will, be meeting

9. Using either the auxiliary shall or the auxiliary will for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Future Perfect of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

She .... by then. (to arrive)

She will have arrived by then.

We .... everyone. (to meet)

We shall have met everyone or We will have met everyone.

1. You ....the advertisement. (to study)
2. He .... the newspapers. (to scan)
3. I ....here for five years. (to be)
4. They ....the proposal. (to consider)
5. It ....raining by tomorrow. (to stop)
6. You .... your plans. (to make)
7. I .... the flowers. (to pick)
8. They ....their minds. (to change)

Answers to exercise 9:

1. will have studied
2. will have scanned
3. shall have been or will have been
4. will have considered
5. will have stopped
6. will have made
7. shall have picked or will have picked

8. will have changed

10. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

She will have foreseen the difficulty.

Will she have foreseen the difficulty?

She will not have foreseen the difficulty.

Will she not have foreseen the difficulty?

Won't she have foreseen the difficulty?

She will have foreseen the difficulty, won't she?

1. It will have happened by then.
2. You will have paid the rent.

Answers to exercise 10:

1. Will it have happened by then?
   It will not have happened by then.
   Will it not have happened by then?
   Won't it have happened by then?
   It will have happened by then, won't it?
2. Will you have paid the rent?
   You will not have paid the rent.
   Will you not have paid the rent?
   Won't you have paid the rent?
   You will have paid the rent, won't you?

11. Using either the auxiliary shall or the auxiliary will for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Future Perfect of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

He .... it soon. (to finish)

He will have finished it soon.

You .... not .... time to read the book. (to have)

You will not have had time to read the book.

.... they .... before? (to fly)

Will they have flown before?

1. I .... for a walk. (to go)
2. They .... not yet .... (to arrive)
3. ....she not .... the apples? (to eat)

4. ....you .... the letter? (to send)
5. They ....an apartment by then. (to find)
6. He .... not ....soundly. (to sleep)
7. ....I not .... you before then? (to see)
8. ....he .... the puzzle? (to solve)
9. We .... the parcel by Monday. (to receive)
10. ....she not .... the chairs? (to sell)
11. ....we .... the bus schedules? (to study)
12. You .... not .... the rabbits. (to feed)

Answers to exercise 11:

1. shall have gone <u>or</u> will have gone
2. will, have arrived
3. Will, have eaten
4. Will, have sent
5. will have found
6. will, have slept
7. Shall <u>or</u> Will, have seen
8. Will, have solved
9. shall have received <u>or</u> will have received
10. Will, have sold
11. Shall <u>or</u> Will, have studied
12. will, have fed

12. Using either the auxiliary <u>shall</u> or the auxiliary <u>will</u> for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Future Perfect Continuous of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

You .... all night. (to wait)

You <u>will have been waiting</u> all night.

They .... a good time. (to have)

hey <u>will have been having</u> a good time.

1. She ....with them. (to argue)
2. We ....the city. (to tour)
3. He ....what happened. (to wonder)
4. I .... inventory. (to take)
5. It ....for two days. (to snow)
6. They ....to come. (to long)

7. You ....a speech. (to give)
8. We ....our breath. (to hold)

Answers to exercise 12:

1. will have been arguing
2. shall have been touring or will have been touring
3. will have been wondering
4. shall have been taking or will have been taking
5. will have been snowing
6. will have been longing
7. will have been giving
8. shall have been holding or will have been holding

13. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

You will have been reading the timetable.

Will you have been reading the timetable?

You will not have been reading the timetable.

Will you not have been reading the timetable?

Won't you have been reading the timetable?

You will have been reading the timetable, won't you?

1. He will have been guarding the luggage.
2. They will have been preparing the meal.

Answers to exercise 13:

1. Will he have been guarding the luggage?
   He will not have been guarding the luggage.
   Will he not have been guarding the luggage?
   Won't he have been guarding the luggage?
   He will have been guarding the luggage, won't he?
2. Will they have been preparing the meal?
   They will not have been preparing the meal.
   Will they not have been preparing the meal?
   Won't they have been preparing the meal?
   They will have been preparing the meal, won't they?

14. Using either the auxiliary shall or the auxiliary will for the first person, fill in the blanks with the Future Perfect Continuous of the verbs shown in

brackets. For example:

They .... the house. (to clean)

They <u>will have been cleaning</u> the house.

.... you .... to call? (to try)

<u>Will</u> you <u>have been trying</u> to call?

He .... not .... the paper. (to read)

He <u>will</u> not <u>have been reading</u> the paper.

1. She ....to help us. (to offer)
2. ....it not .... by then? (to snow)
3. We .... not ....to leave. (to plan)
4. ....they .... for rain? (to hope)
5. I ....my friends. (to visit)
6. He .... not ....the pictures. (to develop)
7. ....she .... the hedge? (to clip)
8. ....we not ....them often? (to see)
9. They ....for twenty-four hours. (to wait)
10. ....he not .... down? (to lie)
11. ....you .... croquet? (to play)
12. They .... not ....here long. (to live)

Answers to exercise 14:

1. will have been offering
2. Will, have been snowing
3. shall <u>or</u> will, have been planning
4. Will, have been hoping
5. shall have been visiting <u>or</u> will have been visiting
6. will, have been developing
7. Will, have been clipping
8. Shall <u>or</u> Will, have been seeing
9. will have been waiting
10. Will, have been lying
11. Will, have been playing
12. will, have been living

15. For each of the following sentences, paying attention to the tense of the underlined verb, complete the sentence correctly by filling in the blank with either the Past Perfect or the Simple Present of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

When I first met him, he ..... already .... (to graduate)
When I first met him, he had already graduated.
We will read the information before we .....a decision. (to make)
We will read the information before we make a decision.

1. They ..... already ....the letter when they heard the news.
2. They will wait until he .... (to come)
3. She will help us if we .... for assistance. (to ask)
4. Although I .... him to come, he stayed away. (to beg)
5. He will send for us as soon as he .... time. (to have)
6. After I .... the grass, it started to rain. (to water)
7. When we called, they .... already ..... the house. (to leave)
8. He will watch while they ....their tricks. (to perform)
9. By the time I ....everything, it was past nine o'clock. (to organize)
10. They will signal when they .... ready. (to be)
11. Even though we .... warm clothes, we became quite cold. (to bring)
12. If it .... tomorrow, we will go skiing. (to snow)
13. We ..... just ..... supper, when the phone rang. (to finish)
14. I will let you know when I .... it. (to find)

Answers to exercise 15:

1. had, mailed
2. comes
3. ask
4. had begged
5. has
6. had watered
7. had, left
8. perform
9. had organized
10. are
11. had brought
12. snows
13. had, finished
14. find

(8)Conjugations with the auxiliary would

EXERCISES for Chapter (8)

1. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

He would like to help us. Would he like to help us?

He would not like to help us. Would he not like to help us?

Wouldn't he like to help us? He would like to help us, wouldn't he?

1. She would find it easy.
2. They would be on time.

Answers to exercise 1:

1. Would she find it easy?
   She would not find it easy.
   Would she not find it easy?
   Wouldn't she find it easy?
   She would find it easy, wouldn't she?
2. Would they be on time?
   They would not be on time.
   Would they not be on time?
   Wouldn't they be on time?
   They would be on time, wouldn't they?

2. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Simple conjugation with the auxiliary <u>would</u>. For example:

I .... some coffee. (to like)

I <u>would like</u> some coffee.

…………... he .... us? (to believe)

<u>Would</u> he <u>believe</u> us?

They .... not ………....... the interruption. (to mind)

They <u>would</u> not <u>mind</u> the interruption.

.... you not .... to stay at home? (to prefer)

<u>Would</u> you not <u>prefer</u> to stay at home?

1. We .... our best. (to try)
2. ....you not .... your glasses? (to need)

3. I .... everything carefully. (to plan)
4. ....they .... us? (to remember)
5. ....he not .... willing to help them? (to be)
6. ....she not .... a good job? (to do)
7. We .... not .... much luggage. (to bring)
8. ....they .... their decision? (to reconsider)
9. You .... a great deal. (to learn)
10. ....he not .... the tickets ahead of time? (to purchase)

Answers to exercise 2:

1. would try
2. Would, need
3. would plan
4. Would, remember
5. Would, be
6. Would, do
7. would, bring
8. Would, reconsider
9. would learn
10. Would, purchase

3. Complete the following polite requests and suggestions, using the indicated verbs in the Simple conjugation with the auxiliary <u>would</u>. For example:

.... you .... some help? (to like)

<u>Would</u> you <u>like</u> some help?

.... you please .... me the way to the post office? (to tell)

<u>Would</u> you please <u>tell</u> me the way to the post office?

1. ....you .... for some coffee? (to care)
2. ....you not .... to visit the library? (to prefer)
3. I think it .... wise to let them know. (to be)
4. ....you please .... here? (to wait)
5. I .... not .... that excursion. (to recommend)
6. ....you .... the door open? (to hold)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. Would, care
2. Would, prefer

3. would be
4. Would, wait
5. would, recommend
6. Would, hold

4. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

She would be arriving by bus. Would she be arriving by bus?

She would not be arriving by bus. Would she not be arriving by bus?

Wouldn't she be arriving by bus?

She would be arriving by bus, wouldn't she?

1. You would be coming with us.
2. He would be setting an example.

Answers to exercise 4:

1. Would you be coming with us?
   You would not be coming with us.
   Would you not be coming with us?
   Wouldn't you be coming with us?
   You would be coming with us, wouldn't you?
2. Would he be setting an example?
   He would not be setting an example.
   Would he not be setting an example?
   Wouldn't he be setting an example?
   He would be setting an example, wouldn't he?

5. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Continuous conjugation with the auxiliary <u>would</u>. For example:

I .... for good weather. (to wish)

I <u>would be wishing</u> for good weather.

.... you .... them? (to visit)

<u>Would</u> you <u>be visiting</u> them?

He .... not .... to come. (to expect)

He <u>would</u> not <u>be expecting</u> to come.

.... they not .... their car? (to drive)

<u>Would</u> they not <u>be driving</u> their car?

1. I .... not .... overtime. (to work)

2. .... she not .... to stay? (to intend)
3. He .... for us to call. (to wait)
4. .... they .... warm clothes? (to wear)
5. You ....twenty dollars on books. (to spend)
6. .... we .... early? (to arrive)
7. .... I not .... the guests? (to receive)
8. They .... not ....him for a long time. (to see)
9. .... he not .... what to do? (to wonder)
10. She .... not .... her bicycle. (to ride)

Answers to exercise 5:

1. would, be working
2. Would, be intending
3. would be waiting
4. Would, be wearing
5. would be spending
6. Would, be arriving
7. Would, be receiving
8. would, be seeing
9. Would, be wondering
10. would, be riding

6. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

It would have been a disaster. Would it have been a disaster?
It would not have been a disaster. Would it not have been a disaster?
Wouldn't it have been a disaster?
It would have been a disaster, wouldn't it?

1. We would have told you.
2. They would have won.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. Would we have told you?
   We would not have told you.
   Would we not have told you?
   Wouldn't we have told you?
   We would have told you, wouldn't we?

2. Would they have won?
   They would not have won.
   Would they not have won?
   Wouldn't they have won?
   They would have won, wouldn't they?

7. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Perfect conjugation with the auxiliary would. For example:

They .... this interesting. (to find)

They would have found this interesting.

.... she .... without us? (to come)

Would she have come without us?

He ……..... not .... the map. (to lose)

He would not have lost the map.

.... we not .... him the news? (to tell)

Would we not have told him the news?

1. I .... everything. (to arrange)
2. She .... not .... to come. (to forget)
3. .... they not .... what to do? (to know)
4. .... he .... this route? (to choose)
5. We ....them make a contribution. (to let)
6. .... you not ....it was missing? (to notice)
7. He .... not .... it to your old address. (to send)
8. .... you .... it? (to mention)
9. I .... able to find you. (to be)
10. .... they not .... us? (to join)

Answers to exercise 7:

1. would have arranged
2. would, have forgotten
3. Would, have known
4. Would, have chosen
5. would have let
6. Would, have noticed
7. would, have sent
8. Would, have mentioned
9. would have been

10. Would, have joined

8. Rewrite the following sentences so that they refer to the past, by changing the verbs from the Simple conjugation to the Perfect conjugation. For example:

I would like to come.

I would have liked to come.

Would he appreciate it?

Would he have appreciated it?

They would not mind.

They would not have minded.

Would she not remember us?

Would she not have remembered us?

1. They would mail us their address.
2. Would you recognize him?
3. He would not order pizza.
4. Would I not need your help?
5. She would prefer to play the violin.
6. Would they not provide clear instructions?
7. It would not be a good idea.
8. Would you feel left out?

Answers to exercise 8:

1. They would have mailed us their address.
2. Would you have recognized him?
3. He would not have ordered pizza.
4. Would I not have needed your help?
5. She would have preferred to play the violin.
6. Would they not have provided clear instructions?
7. It would not have been a good idea.
8. Would you have felt left out?

9. Rewrite the following sentences so that they refer to the present, by changing the verbs from the Perfect conjugation to the Simple conjugation. For example:

It would have been preferable.

It would be preferable.

Would we have succeeded?

Would we succeed?

They would not have understood.

They would not understand.

Would you not have preferred to go?

Would you not prefer to go?

1. Would she have drunk the lemonade?
2. You would not have wanted to be late.
3. We would have begun at once.
4. I would not have stayed up all night.
5. Would he not have eaten the ice cream?
6. Would they have made the dessert?
7. She would have known what to do.
8. Would you not have recommended it?

Answers to exercise 9:

1. Would she drink the lemonade?
2. You would not want to be late.
3. We would begin at once.
4. I would not stay up all night.
5. Would he not eat the ice cream?
6. Would they make the dessert?
7. She would know what to do.

8. Would you not recommend it?

10. Rewrite the following affirmative statements as questions, negative statements, negative questions without contractions, negative questions with contractions, and affirmative statements followed by negative tag questions. For example:

I would have been playing in the orchestra.

Would I have been playing in the orchestra?

I would not have been playing in the orchestra.

Would I not have been playing in the orchestra?

Wouldn't I have been playing in the orchestra?

I would have been playing in the orchestra, wouldn't I?

1. He would have been listening to the radio.
2. She would have been watering the lawn.

Answers to exercise 10:

1. Would he have been listening to the radio?
   He would not have been listening to the radio.

Would he not have been listening to the radio?
Wouldn't he have been listening to the radio?
He would have been listening to the radio, wouldn't he?

2. Would she have been watering the lawn?
   She would not have been watering the lawn.
   Would she not have been watering the lawn?
   Wouldn't she have been watering the lawn?
   She would have been watering the lawn, wouldn't she?

11. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Perfect Continuous conjugation with the auxiliary would. For example:

He .... to see us. (to hope)
He would have been hoping to see us.
.... you .... to come? (to plan)
Would you have been planning to come?
We ..... not .... rubber boots. (to wear)
We would not have been wearing rubber boots.
.... she not .... this? (to expect)
Would she not have been expecting this?

1. I .... to catch the bus. (to hurry)
2. .... you .... with us? (to stay)
3. He .... not ....by train. (to travel)
4. .... we not ....you here? (to meet)
5. They .... to Halifax. (to come)
6. .... we .... a report? (to make)
7. .... she not ....the parcels? (to open)
8. We .... not .... to the radio. (to listen)
9. You .... for a long time. (to wait)
10. .... they ....the operation? (to run)

Answers to exercise 11:

1. would have been hurrying
2. Would, have been staying
3. would, have been traveling
4. Would, have been meeting
5. would have been coming
6. Would, have been making

7. Would, have been opening
8. would, have been listening
9. would have been waiting
10. Would, have been running

12. Put each of the following sentences into the past, by changing the verb from the Continuous conjugation to the Perfect Continuous conjugation. For example:

I would be enjoying it.

I would have been enjoying it.

Would she be preparing for the trip?

Would she have been preparing for the trip?

We would not be entertaining such suspicions.

We would not have been entertaining such suspicions.

Would he not be organizing the evidence?

Would he not have been organizing the evidence?

1. I would be investigating the report.
2. Would he be following the shoreline?
3. You would not be listening to rumors.
4. It would be growing colder.
5. They would not be exceeding the speed limit.
6. Would she not be weeding the garden?
7. Would we be receiving the messages?
8. They would be reporting to us.

Answers to exercise 12:

1. I would have been investigating the report.
2. Would he have been following the shoreline?
3. You would not have been listening to rumors.
4. It would have been growing colder.
5. They would not have been exceeding the speed limit.
6. Would she not have been weeding the garden?
7. Would we have been receiving the messages?
8. They would have been reporting to us.

13. For each of the following sentences, change the verb in the main clause from the Simple Present to the Simple Past; and change the verb in the subordinate clause from the Simple Future to the future in the past. If necessary, alter the adverb or adverb phrase referring to time. For example:

He thinks it will snow tomorrow .
He thought it would snow the next day.
We believe she will succeed.
We believed she would succeed.
I think she will come next week.
I thought she would come the next week.

1. I promise I will help you.
2. She says the letter will arrive tomorrow.
3. The boys are certain that their plane will fly.
4. We expect the weather will improve.
5. He maintains that he will win next year.
6. We feel that the plan will not work.
7. You know I will return next week.
8. They tell us that the harvest will be good.
9. He hopes the circus will come tomorrow.
10. I am sure they will be welcome.
11. We think the fruit will be ripe next month.
12. They say they will follow us.

Answers to exercise 13:

1. I promised I would help you.
2. She said the letter would arrive the next day.
3. The boys were certain that their plane would fly.
4. We expected the weather would improve.
5. He maintained that he would win the next year.
6. We felt that the plan would not work.
7. You knew I would return the next week.
8. They told us that the harvest would be good.
9. He hoped the circus would come the next day.
10. I was sure they would be welcome.
11. We thought the fruit would be ripe the next month.
12. They said they would follow us.

(9) The subjunctive

EXERCISES for Chapter (9)

1. Fill in the blanks with the Simple Present Subjunctive of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

They insisted that she ……………………... at once. (to come)

They insisted that she come at once.

The proposal that she .... us has merit. (to meet)

The proposal that she meet us has merit.

1. He suggested that I .... ready by eight o'clock. (to be)
2. We request that she .... the window. (to open)
3. They demanded that he .... the room. (to leave)
4. I will ask that she .... me. (to accompany)
5. They recommended that he .... to Bermuda. (to fly)
6. The request that we …………………...ready to leave at six is a nuisance. (to be)
7. The recommendation that she ....a holiday was carried out. (to take)
8. It is necessary that you .... able to come with us. (to be)
9. They asked that we .... standing. (to remain)
10. The requirement that he ....work will be hard to meet. (to find)
11. It is important that he ....everything he can. (to learn)
12. The demand that she …………………………....the report has been carried out. (to complete)

Answers to exercise 1:

1. be
2. open
3. leave
4. accompany
5. fly
6. be
7. take
8. be

9. remain
10. find
11. learn
12. complete

2. Complete each of the following sentences with the Past Perfect Subjunctive of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

They wished they .... not .... (to come)

They wished they had not come.

I wish I .... ready on time. (to be)

I wish I had been ready on time.

Will she wish she .... her bicycle? (to ride)

Will she wish she had ridden her bicycle?

1. I wish I .... not .... the answers. (to lose)
2. They wished they ....not ....the appointment. (to forget)
3. He will wish he ....us the book. (to show)
4. Will they wish we ....them some food? (to give)
5. We wish it .... yesterday. (to snow)
6. She wished she .... not .... the window. (to open)
7. I wished I .... the news. (to hear)
8. You wish you .... what to do. (to know)

Answers to exercise 2:

1. had, lost
2. had, forgotten
3. had shown
4. had given
5. had snowed
6. had, opened
7. had heard
8. had known

3. Complete each of the following sentences with the Simple Past Subjunctive of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

He wished he .... able to do it. (to be)

He wished he were able to do it.

I wish I .... with you. (to agree)

I wish I agreed with you.

They will wish they ……………………….... time to come. (to have)

They will wish they <u>had</u> time to come.

1. I wish it .... possible to finish the work tonight. (to be)
2. Will he wish he .... ready? (to be)
3. She wished she .... how to sing. (to know)
4. We wish they .... to come with us. (to want)
5. You wished you .... better. (to feel)
6. They will wish it .... warmer. (to be)
7. Does he wish he .... younger? (to be)
8. I wish I .... the subject more interesting. (to find)

Answers to exercise 3:

1. were
2. were
3. knew
4. wanted
5. felt
6. were
7. were
8. found

4. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Simple conjugation with <u>would</u>. For example:

They wished the sun .... (to shine)

They wished the sun <u>would shine</u>.

Does she wish it ....? (to snow)

Does she wish it <u>would snow</u>?

You will wish the bell .... (to ring)

You will wish the bell <u>would ring</u>.

1. They wished she ....the arrangements. (to make)
2. He will wish you .... him. (to help)
3. She wishes the mail .... (to come)
4. We wished they .... (to hurry)
5. You will wish the door .... (to open)
6. They wish we .... for them. (to wait)
7. I wish you .... to me. (to write)
8. Will she wish you .... her? (to join)

Answers to exercise 4:

1. would make
2. would help
3. would come
4. would hurry
5. would open
6. would wait
7. would write
8. would join

5. Paying attention to the underlined adverbs indicating time, complete each of the following sentences with the correct form of the verb shown in brackets. Use the Past Perfect Subjunctive, the Simple Past Subjunctive, or the Simple conjugation with would, depending on whether the time of the action referred to in the subordinate clause is earlier than, the same as, or later than, the time of making the wish. For example:

We wished they .... us earlier. (to call)

We wished they had called us earlier.

She wishes she .... in Rome now.

She wishes she were in Rome now.

I wish you .... with us tomorrow. (to come)

I wish you would come with us tomorrow.

1. I wish he .... here now. (to be)
2. I wish that you .... here yesterday. (to be)
3. We wish you .... tomorrow. (to come)
4. You will wish you .... earlier. (to leave)
5. They wished he ....with them the next day. (to come)
6. We wish you .... yesterday. (to arrive)
7. I wish that he .... us next year. (to visit)
8. She wishes that she .... at home now. (to be)
9. You wish that he .... you last week. (to help)
10. He will always wish he .... rich. (to be)
11. The boy wished that he ....the competition the next day. (to win)
12. She will wish she .... the arrangements earlier. (to make)
13. I wish the weather .... warmer now. (to be)
14. We always wished we .... fluent in other languages. (to be)
15. They wish he ....them next week. (to telephone)

Answers to exercise 5:

1. were
2. had been
3. would come
4. had left
5. would come
6. had arrived
7. would visit
8. were
9. had helped
10. were
11. would win
12. had made
13. were
14. were
15. would telephone

6. For each of the following sentences, rewrite the subordinate clause, using the form in which the word if is omitted. For example:

If I were in your position, I would pay close attention.

Were I in your position, I would pay close attention.

If it had been raining, we would have used our umbrellas.

Had it been raining, we would have used our umbrellas.

1. If he were here, he would lend us his car.
2. If I had remembered their address, I would have sent them a card.
3. If we were not waiting for a telephone call, we would go downtown.
4. If they had recognized her, they would have spoken to her.
5. If I had been intending to go shopping, I would have let you know.
6. If you had seen the movie, you would have liked it.
7. If it were not snowing, we would go out.
8. If he had been shoveling the walk, we would have seen him.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. Were he here, he would lend us his car.

2. Had I remembered their address, I would have sent them a card.
3. Were we not waiting for a telephone call, we would go downtown.
4. Had they recognized her, they would have spoken to her.
5. Had I been intending to go shopping, I would have let you know.
6. Had you seen the movie, you would have liked it.
7. Were it not snowing, we would go out.
8. Had he been shoveling the walk, we would have seen him.

7. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Simple conjugation with would. For example:

We .... if we were ready. (to come)

We would come if we were ready.

……..you .... more if you had time? (to travel)

Would you travel more if you had time?

If they saw us, they ..... not .... us. (to recognize)

If they saw us, they would not recognize us.

………you not ………………..... glad if you were rich? (to be)

Would you not be glad if you were rich?

1. If we were hitchhiking, ...you ....to pick us up? (to stop)
2. If we waited for him, we .... not ....on time. (to be)
3. .... he .... us know if we made a mistake? (to let)
4. I .... not .....to have a party if you were not there. (to want)
5. If you knew more about her, you ....your opinion. (to change)
6. .... you .... pizza if you did not like it? (to order)
7. ....they not ....to come if we asked them? (to agree)
8. We ....not ....a car unless we were insured. (to drive)

Answers to exercise 7:

1. would, stop
2. would, be
3. Would, let
4. would, want
5. would change
6. Would, order

7. Would, agree
8. would, drive

8. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Perfect conjugation with would. For example:

If it had rained, I .... at home. (to stay)

If it had rained, I would have stayed at home.

.... you ....with us if we had asked you? (to come)

Would you have come with us if we had asked you?

If he had hurried, he ……..... not ....the bus. (to miss)

If he had hurried, he would not have missed the bus.

.... she not .... if she had seen us? (to wave)

Would she not have waved if she had seen us?

1. If he had arrived late,.............w...............without him? (to begin)
2. If they had felt thirsty, ...they not.......the lemonade? (to drink)
3. If we had been here, we ....not ....the fireworks. (to miss)
4. If his office had called,........he not ....to work? (to return)
5. She .... not .... early if she had not had a good reason. (to leave)
6. If they had searched more carefully, they .... the watch sooner. (to find)
7. If you had visited Rome, ...you ....to the opera? (to go)
8. She ....down if she had been tired. (to lie)

Answers to exercise 8:

1. would, have begun
2. would, have drunk
3. would, have missed
4. would, have returned
5. would, have left
6. would have found
7. would, have gone
8. would have lain

9. The following statements contain false or improbable conditions. Paying attention to the underlined adverbs indicating time, complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the appropriate conjugations with would. use the Simple conjugation for actions pertaining to the present or the

future, and use the Perfect conjugation for actions pertaining to the past. For example:

If you came with us now, you .... everything. (to see)

If you came with us now, you would see everything.

…….he ....us yesterday if we had slept in? (to wake)

Would he have woken us yesterday if we had slept in?

1. If he were here now he .....not .....to help us. (to hesitate)
2. I ....the book last week if I had known you wanted it. (to finish)
3. .....you ....to him last night if you had seen him? (to speak)
4. If they were old enough, they ......the contest next week. (to enter)
5. .....she not ....a vacation now if she had more time? (to take)
6. If he had sent a message, we ....it two days ago. (to receive)
7. I ....it if you came with me now. (to appreciate)
8. .....she not ....grateful if we offered to help her tomorrow? (to be)
9. .... he ....yesterday if he had entered the race? (to win)
10. .... they not .... more books last month if they had noticed the stock was low? (to order)
11. .... she not .... us now if she knew where we lived? (to visit)
12. .... you .... cucumbers yesterday if they had been on sale? (to buy)

Answers to exercise 9:

1. would, hesitate
2. would have finished
3. Would, have spoken
4. would enter
5. Would, take
6. would have received
7. would appreciate
8. Would, be
9. Would, have won
10. Would, have ordered
11. Would, visit
12. Would, have bought

10. For each of the following sentences, complete the subordinate clause with the Simple Past Subjunctive of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

If he .... in town, he would call us. (to be)

If he were in town, he would call us.

Would you go to the party if you .....an invitation? (to receive)

Would you go to the party if you received an invitation?

If he ..... not .... his work, he would find another job. (to like)

If he did not like his work, he would find another job.

1. If he .... rich, he would travel. (to be)
2. ....I not anxious to meet him, I would stay at home. (to be)
3. He would have more free time if he .....not ....so hard. (to work)
4. If I .... a car, I would visit Cape Breton. (to have)
5. We would take the bus if it .... to snow. (to begin)
6. If you ....him, you would surely recognize him. (to see)
7. I would not confide in him if I .... not ....him. (to trust)
8. If we .... not ....time, we would let you know. (to have)
9. If he ....an expedition, I would certainly join it. (to organize)
10. I would not worry about it if I .... you. (to be)

Answers to exercise 10:

1. were
2. Were
3. did, work
4. had
5. began
6. saw
7. did, trust
8. did, have
9. organized
10. were

11. For each of the following sentences, complete the subordinate clause with the Past Perfect Subjunctive of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

If I ....him to do it, he would have obeyed me. (to order)

If I had ordered him to do it, he would have obeyed me.

Had it not .... yesterday, we would have raked the leaves. (to snow)
Had it not snowed yesterday, we would have raked the leaves.

1. I would not have got lost if I ....the map. (to study)
2. .....he ....at home, we would have visited him. (to be)
3. We would have invited him if we .... he would come. (to think)
4. He would have applied for the job if he .... the advertisement. (to see)
5. We would not have ordered tea, ... we .... how late it was. (to know)
6. .... it not ...., they would have held the party in the park. (to rain)
7. We would have agreed with you if we .... what you meant. (to understand)
8. If you .... salt on the steps, they would not have been so slippery. (to put)
9. .... he .... to us, we would have known when to expect him. (to write)
10. If he .... to take the course, he would have had to work hard. (to choose)

Answers to exercise 11:

1. had studied
2. Had, been
3. had thought
4. had seen
5. had, known
6. Had, rained
7. had understood
8. had put
9. Had, written
10. had chosen

12. The following statements contain false or improbable conditions. Paying attention to the underlined adverbs indicating time, complete the subordinate clauses with the correct forms of the verbs shown in brackets. Use the Simple Past Subjunctive for actions pertaining to the present or the future,

and use the Past Perfect Subjunctive for actions pertaining to the past. For example:

If she .....here now, she would be admiring the rose bushes. (to be)

If she were here now, she would be admiring the rose bushes.

..... he .... here last week, we would have met him. (to stay)

Had he stayed here last week, we would have met him.

1. If he .... here now, we would ask his opinion. (to be)
2. We would have forgotten our tickets last night, if she ....not .... us. (to remind)
3. .....I.......earlier, I would have arrived on time yesterday. (to leave)
4. Would you visit Spain next summer, if you .... enough money? (to have)
5. If it .... yesterday, we would not need to water the lawn. (to rain)
6. If he .... you last Wednesday, he would have asked your advice. (to see)
7. If they .... to leave now, they would need special permission. (to want)
8. ..... they .... of the concert yesterday, they would have arranged to go. (to know)
9. Would you not have stayed longer last week, if you .... able to? (to be)
10. If they .... the letter tomorrow, they would receive an answer in two weeks. (to write)
11. If he ....the book now, he would enjoy it. (to read)
12. If we .... more attention yesterday, we would know what time to be there. (to pay)

Answers to exercise 12:

1. were
2. had, reminded
3. Had, left
4. had
5. had rained
6. had seen
7. wanted

8. Had, known
9. had been
10. wrote
11. read
12. had paid

13. Change each of the following sentences from a statement containing a probable condition to a statement containing a false or improbable condition. Following the model of the examples, change the underlined verb in the subordinate clause from the Simple Present Indicative to the Simple Past Subjunctive; and change the underlined verb in the main clause from the Simple Future to the Simple conjugation with would. For example:

If she is angry, she will scold us.

If she were angry, she would scold us.

If he wins, we will congratulate him.

If he won, we would congratulate him.

They will join us, if we send them a message.

They would join us, if we sent them a message.

1. If they want to see you, they will come to the party.
2. If he is curious, he will ask what we are doing.
3. She will help us, if she has time.
4. If they work hard, they will succeed.
5. If I find the culprits, I will teach them a lesson.
6. If she recognizes us, she will wave.
7. They will treat you well, if you are honest with them.
8. If she likes you, she will tell you.
9. If he is ready, we will invite him to come.
10. If they see me, they will want to speak to me.

Answers to exercise 13:

1. If they wanted to see you, they would come to the party.
2. If he were curious, he would ask what we are doing.
3. She would help us, if she had time.
4. If they worked hard, they would succeed.
5. If I found the culprits, I would teach them a lesson.
6. If she recognized us, she would wave.
7. They would treat you well, if you were honest with them.
8. If she liked you, she would tell you.

9. If he <u>were</u> ready, we <u>would invite</u> him to come.
10. If they <u>saw</u> me, they <u>would want</u> to speak to me.

14. Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with the Imperative form of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

.... the door. (to open)

<u>Open</u> the door.

Don't .... to come. (to forget)

Don't <u>forget</u> to come.

1. Don't .... out late. (to stay)
2. Please .... ready on time. (to be)
3. Don't .... about that. (to worry)
4. .... your own business! (to mind)
5. .... careful not to trip. (to be)
6. Do not .... everything you hear. (to believe)
7. Always ....both ways before crossing the street. (to look)
8. You .... here while I go into the store. (to wait)
9. .... me! (to excuse)
10. .... me a postcard if you have time. (to send)

Answers to exercise 14:

1. stay
2. be
3. worry
4. Mind
5. Be
6. believe
7. look
8. wait
9. Excuse
10. Send

(10) Modal verbs

EXERCISES for Chapter (10)

1. Change the following affirmative statements into questions. For example:

I may go.

May I go?

We could have found it.

Could we have found it?

1. I must leave at four o'clock.
2. He might be leaving for work now.
3. We can solve the puzzle.
4. You should have called him.
5. They could have been waiting for the bus.
6. I shall go out now.
7. You will have finished the book.
8. We should be making the arrangements.
9. She would like to know the answer.
10. They can explain what happened.

Answers to exercise 1:

1. Must I leave at four o'clock?
2. Might he be leaving for work now?
3. Can we solve the puzzle?
4. Should you have called him?
5. Could they have been waiting for the bus?
6. Shall I go out now?
7. Will you have finished the book?
8. Should we be making the arrangements?
9. Would she like to know the answer?
10. Can they explain what happened?

2. Change the following affirmative statements into negative statements. For example:

I can answer the question.

I cannot answer the question.

He shall be sorry.

He shall not be sorry.

1. You must come with us.
2. It may be sunny tomorrow.
3. She could have won the race.
4. We might be right.
5. You would have liked that movie.
6. They can swim very well.
7. She might be finishing school now.
8. He should have been walking to work.
9. I shall be happy to see him.
10. You will have been working all night.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. You must not come with us.
2. It may not be sunny tomorrow.
3. She could not have won the race.
4. We might not be right.
5. You would not have liked that movie.
6. They cannot swim very well.
7. She might not be finishing school now.
8. He should not have been walking to work.
9. I shall not be happy to see him.
10. You will not have been working all night.

3. Change the following affirmative statements into negative questions. Do not use contractions in this exercise. For example:

He must be at work now.

Must he not be at work now?

They might call us later.

Might they not call us later?

1. You should be wearing a warm hat.
2. He could have decided to stay at home.
3. They might have forgotten the message.
4. She will see you again next week.
5. They would enjoy riding on the ferry.
6. He may decide to go camping.
7. They could have been playing football yesterday.

8. We shall visit our friends.
9. She must have wanted to join us.
10. He should be getting more sleep.

Answers to exercise 3:

1. Should you not be wearing a warm hat?
2. Could he not have decided to stay at home?
3. Might they not have forgotten the message?
4. Will she not see you again next week?
5. Would they not enjoy riding on the ferry?
6. May he not decide to go camping?
7. Could they not have been playing football yesterday?
8. Shall we not visit our friends?
9. Must she not have wanted to join us?
10. Should he not be getting more sleep?

4. For each of the following sentences, change the verb in the main clause from the Simple Present to the Simple Past; and change the modal auxiliary from the present to the past. For example:

He says he can do it.

He said he could do it.

Do you think she will manage it?

Did you think she would manage it?

1. She says he may go.
2. I think we can finish on time.
3. They know we will help them.
4. He says he must leave.
5. We believe she will be there.
6. Do you hope they will reply soon?
7. Does he not realize we may meet him there?
8. You think we can reach our destination by nightfall.
9. suppose he must be at home.
10. I predict I shall succeed.

Answers to exercise 4:

1. She said he might go.
2. I thought we could finish on time.
3. They knew we would help them.

4. He said he must leave.
5. We believed she would be there.
6. Did you hope they would reply soon?
7. Did he not realize we might meet him there?
8. You thought we could reach our destination by nightfall.
9. I supposed he must be at home.
10. I predicted I should succeed.

5. For each of the following sentences, change the verb in the main clause from the Simple Past to the Simple Present; and change the modal auxiliary from the past to the present. For example:

They felt they could not win.

They feel they cannot win.

He believed he would reach the Amazon River in a few days.

He believes he will reach the Amazon River in a few days.

1. He thought he might arrive early.
2. She felt she must make a phone call.
3. I maintained they would not have any difficulty.
4. They realized they could not do all the work in one day.
5. We knew we should not be able to return home for Christmas.
6. They hoped they could find their way.
7. He imagined he would be able to convince us.
8. She suspected they must be living nearby.
9. I hoped you would enjoy the play.
10. We thought you might know him.

Answers to exercise 5:

1. He thinks he may arrive early.
2. She feels she must make a phone call.
3. I maintain they will not have any difficulty.
4. They realize they cannot do all the work in one day.
5. We know we shall not be able to return home for Christmas.
6. They hope they can find their way.
7. He imagines he will be able to convince us.
8. She suspects they must be living nearby.
9. I hope you will enjoy the play.
10. We think you may know him.

6. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Simple conjugation with the auxiliary could. For example:

I wish I .... Portuguese. (to speak)

I wish I could speak Portuguese.

They will wish they .... the questions. (to answer)

They will wish they could answer the questions.

You wished you .... some chocolate. (to buy)

You wished you could buy some chocolate.

1. He wishes he .... them. (to call)
2. We wish we ....more time sightseeing. (to spend)
3. She wished she .... you. (to visit)
4. They will wish they .... to the concert. (to go)
5. I wished I .... my way home. (to find)
6. He wishes he .... famous. (to become)
7. I wish I .... it to you. (to describe)

Answers to exercise 6:

1. could call
2. could spend
3. could visit
4. could go
5. could find
6. could become
7. could describe

7. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Simple conjugation with the auxiliary could. For example:

If he wanted to, he .... how to sail a boat. (to learn)

If he wanted to, he could learn how to sail a boat.

If we ....anywhere, we would visit Greece. (to travel)

If we could travel anywhere, we would visit Greece.

1. If I .... you, I would be glad to do it. (to help)
2. If she played the piano, she ....your singing. (to accompany)
3. We ....before dawn if we made all our preparations tonight. (to depart)
4. He would be thrilled if he ....to ride a horse. (to learn)
5. If she came with us, we ....her all the sights. (to show)
6. If they gave us their address, we ....them a card. (to send)

7. He would move at once if he ....a better place to live. (to find)

Answers to exercise 7:

1. could help
2. could accompany
3. could depart
4. could learn
5. could show
6. could send
7. could find

8. Complete the following sentences, using the indicated verbs in the Perfect conjugation with the auxiliary <u>could</u>. For example:

Had I studied harder, I ....every question. (to answer)

Had I studied harder, I <u>could have answered</u> every question.

.... she ....you earlier, she would have spoken to you. (to see)

<u>Could</u> she <u>have seen</u> you earlier, she would have spoken to you.

1. If you ....him trying to skate, you would have laughed. (to see)
2. If I had experienced difficulties, I ....him for help. (to ask)
3. It would have been better if we ....everything to her. (to explain)
4. Had they had permission, they.............the arrangements themselves. (to make)
5. We ....easily our way if we had not brought a compass with us. (to lose)
6. .... they .... what he had in mind, they would not have been so complacent. (to know)
7. Had a flying saucer landed on the roof, he .... not .... more surprised. (to be)
8. If only I .... them of the truth, much time and trouble would have been saved. (to convince)
9. If you .... what might happen, would you have acted differently? (to guess)
10. Had I realized he was in town, I ....him. (to contact)

Answers to exercise 8:

1. could have seen
2. could have asked

3. could have explained
4. could have made
5. could, have lost
6. Could, have known
7. could, have been
8. could have convinced
9. could have guessed
10. could have contacted

9. Fill in the blanks, indicating whether each of the following sentences is somewhat polite (S), quite polite (Q), or very polite (V). Notice the indirect phrasing of the most polite requests and suggestions. For example:

Could you pass the butter? S

Would you please pass the butter? Q

Might I trouble you to pass the butter? V

1. Could you help me? .....
2. Would you like some help? .....
3. Might I be of assistance? .....
4. You could come with us ..... .
5. You might wish to accompany us ..... .
6. Would you like to come with us? .....
7. Might I trouble you for two pounds of fish? .....
8. I would like to buy two pounds of fish, please ..... .
9. Could you give me two pounds of fish? .....
10. Could I have your opinion on this? .....
11. Would you please tell me what you think? .....
12. Might I know your feelings on the matter? .....

Answers to exercise 9:

1.S 2. Q 3. V 4. S 5. V 6. Q 7. V 8. Q 9. S 10. S 11. Q 12. V

10. Complete each of the following sentences with the auxiliary may, might or must. Use may or might when the event described seems somewhat probable, and use must when the event described seems very probable. For example:

You ……….... be right; we shall have to wait and see.

You may be right; we shall have to wait and see. or You might be right; we shall have to wait and see.

That .... be our landlord; I would recognize him anywhere.

That <u>must</u> be our landlord; I would recognize him anywhere.

1. Although it .... be true, it seems unlikely.
2. That .... have been the number 10 bus, because no other bus runs on this street.
3. We .... have to wait a long time for a bus, because they do not run very frequently.
4. That .... be the right answer; there is no other possibility.
5. Tell me your problem; I .... be able to help you.
6. It .... have been he who answered the phone, because no one else was at home.
7. Since we have never been to this store before, we .... have difficulty finding what we want.
8. You ....be pleased that you are doing so well in your new job.
9. I ....go downtown tomorrow; it depends on the weather.
10. Although he is a very careful worker, it is possible that he ....have made a mistake.

Answers to exercise 10:

1. may <u>or</u> might
2. must
3. may <u>or</u> might
4. must
5. may <u>or</u> might
6. must
7. may <u>or</u> might
8. must
9. may <u>or</u> might
10. may <u>or</u> might

11. Rewrite the following sentences, putting the underlined verbs into the future. For example:

They <u>can explain</u> the situation to us.

They <u>will be able to explain</u> the situation to us.

<u>May</u> they <u>leave</u> whenever they wish?

<u>Will</u> they <u>be allowed to leave</u> whenever they wish?

She must obtain a license.

She will have to obtain a license.

1. She can describe it to you.
2. You must lock the doors when you leave.
3. He can follow the instructions.
4. May they stay overnight?
5. We must remember to buy groceries.
6. She can finish the work on time.
7. Must he take his glasses with him?
8. Can they buy the tickets in advance?
9. She must learn to be more careful.
10. You may choose your own seat.

Answers to exercise 11:

1. She will be able to describe it to you.
2. You will have to lock the doors when you leave.
3. He will be able to follow the instructions.
4. Will they be allowed to stay overnight?
5. We will have to remember to buy groceries.
6. She will be able to finish the work on time.
7. Will he have to take his glasses with him?
8. Will they be able to buy the tickets in advance?
9. She will have to learn to be more careful.
10. You will be allowed to choose your own seat.

12. Add negative tag questions to the following affirmative statements. For example:

They are lucky.

They are lucky, aren't they?

You know what I mean.

You know what I mean, don't you?

We will tell him the truth.

We will tell him the truth, won't we?

She could try harder.

She could try harder, couldn't she?

1. You are cold.
2. They passed the test.

3. I can do this well.
4. You live near the school.
5. He went downtown.
6. We should call them.
7. he likes toffee.
8. They could help us.
9. I won the race.
10. You were reading.
11. He rides a bicycle.
12. We would need more time.

Answers to exercise 12:

1. You are cold, aren't you?
2. They passed the test, didn't they?
3. I can do this well, can't I?
4. You live near the school, don't you?
5. He went downtown, didn't he?
6. We should call them, shouldn't we?
7. She likes toffee, doesn't she?
8. They could help us, couldn't they?
9. I won the race, didn't I?
10. You were reading, weren't you?
11. He rides a bicycle, doesn't he?
12. We would need more time, wouldn't we?

13. Add affirmative tag questions to the following negative statements. For example:

She isn't well.

She isn't well, is she?

You don't eat fish.

You don't eat fish, do you?

He hadn't found it.

He hadn't found it, had he?

They won't mind.

They won't mind, will they?

1. They won't reach their destination before five o'clock.
2. He doesn't want to come with us.

3. She hasn't eaten breakfast yet.
4. They aren't very clever.
5. I couldn't have persuaded you.
6. You won't forget to come.
7. We weren't expecting company.
8. They wouldn't like that.

Answers to exercise 13:

1. They won't reach their destination before five o'clock, will they?
2. He doesn't want to come with us, does he?
3. She hasn't eaten breakfast yet, has she?
4. They aren't very clever, are they?
5. I couldn't have persuaded you, could I?
6. You won't forget to come, will you?
7. We weren't expecting company, were we?
8. They wouldn't like that, would they?

14. Write affirmative short answers to the following questions. For example:
Is he thirsty?
Yes, he is.
Haven't they read the book?
Yes, they have.
Can they finish the work by themselves?
Yes, they can. Should she leave now?
Yes, she should.

1. Do we need any butter?
2. May they send for you?
3. Is she sure she is right?
4. Does he enjoy studying?
5. Had they been meaning to call us?
6. Couldn't he send us the information?
7. Would she like to listen to the radio?
8. Had he been wanting to travel?

Answers to exercise 14:

1. Yes, we do.
2. Yes, they may.

3. Yes, she is.
4. Yes, he does.
5. Yes, they had.
6. Yes, he could.
7. Yes, she would.
8. Yes, he had.

15. Write negative short answers to the following questions. For example:
Wasn't he thirsty?
No, he wasn't.
Were they watching television?
No, they weren't.
Should we turn left here?
No, we shouldn't.
Will they want some coffee?
No, they won't.

1. Isn't she driving her own car?
2. Will he be visiting Denmark?
3. Would she mind?
4. Could they understand everything?
5. Will she have to get up early?
6. Should he warn them?
7. Didn't we sell all the chocolate bars?
8. Couldn't they find any evidence?

Answers to exercise 15:

1. No, she isn't.
2. No, he won't.
3. No, she wouldn't.
4. No, they couldn't.
5. No, she won't.
6. No, he shouldn't.
7. No, we didn't.
8. No, they couldn't.

16. Add the short form construction using the words and so to each of the following affirmative statements. Use the subjects shown in brackets. For example:

He is lucky. (I)

He is lucky, and so am I.

She likes chocolate. (you)

She likes chocolate, and so do you.

They can swim well. (we)

They can swim well, and so can we.

1. We are thirsty. (they)
2. You have been helpful. (she)
3. I swam to the island. (he)
4. He was riding a horse. (you)
5. They can understand Dutch. (we)
6. She enjoyed the trip. (I)
7. You should study hard. (they)
8. He reads a great deal. (she)

Answers to exercise 16:

1. We are thirsty, and so are they.
2. You have been helpful, and so has she.
3. I swam to the island, and so did he.
4. He was riding a horse, and so were you.
5. They can understand Dutch, and so can we.
6. She enjoyed the trip, and so did I.
7. You should study hard, and so should they.
8. He reads a great deal, and so does she.

17. Add the short form construction using the words and neither to each of the following negative statements. Use the subjects shown in brackets. For example:

He is not angry. (we)

He is not angry, and neither are we.

They didn't visit you. (I)

They didn't visit you, and neither did I.

I couldn't understand it. (she)

I couldn't understand it, and neither could she.

1. You haven't finished supper. (she)
2. He couldn't tell the time. (they)
3. She is not planning to go. (we)

4. We didn't wait long. (he)
5. He has not been feeling well. (I)
6. She cannot run fast. (they)
7. We do not own a canary. (he)
8. You won't be needing an umbrella. (we)

Answers to exercise 17:

1. You haven't finished supper, and neither has she.
2. He couldn't tell the time, and neither could they.
3. She is not planning to go, and neither are we.
4. We didn't wait long, and neither did he.
5. He has not been feeling well, and neither have I.
6. She cannot run fast, and neither can they.
7. We do not own a canary, and neither does he.
8. You won't be needing an umbrella, and neither will we.

(11) Transitive and intransitive verbs

EXERCISES for Chapter (11)

1. In each of the following sentences, underline the direct object of the verb. For example:

She forgot the pencils.

She forgot the pencils.

Was he writing a letter?

Was he writing a letter?

You did not answer the question.

You did not answer the question.

1. I watched the birds.
2. He did not close the window.
3. She rang the bell.
4. Did you find the answer?
5. I opened the door.
6. Did she play the violin?
7. You will need an umbrella.
8. They are not carrying the parcels.
9. You organized the race.
10. Were they using the blankets?

Answers for exercise 1:

1. birds
2. window
3. bell
4. answer
5. door
6. violin
7. umbrella
8. parcels
9. race
10. blankets

2. In the following sentences, the direct objects of the verbs are printed in bold type. In addition, each sentence contains an adverb or adverb phrase

indicating time. Depending upon whether or not there is a direct object, complete each sentence using either to lay or to lie, as appropriate. Use the Present Continuous tense if the action takes place in the present, and use the Simple Past tense if the action took place in the past. For example:

They .... the bricks now.

They are laying the bricks now.

I .... the money on the counter last night.

I laid the money on the counter last night.

Right now, the dogs .... in the middle of the road.

Right now, the dogs are lying in the middle of the road.

Yesterday, he .... in bed until ten o'clock.

Yesterday, he lay in bed until ten o'clock.

1. Now I .... too close to the fire.
2. Last night he ....twenty dollars on top of the bookcase.
3. Right now she .... a fire.
4. Until last year, the treasure ....hidden under the earth.
5. Yesterday she .... her coat on the bed.
6. His books .... on the floor all last week.
7. Right now he ....low in order to stay out of danger.
8. Yesterday morning he ....the parcel close to the door.
9. Last night they .... in wait for the thieves.
10. Now they .... their cards on the table.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. am lying
2. laid
3. is laying
4. lay
5. laid
6. lay
7. is lying
8. laid
9. lay
10. are laying

3. In the following sentences, the direct objects of the verbs are printed in bold type. In addition, each sentence contains an adverb or adverb phrase indicating time. Depending upon whether or not there is a direct object, complete each sentence using either to raise or to rise, as appropriate. Use

the Present Continuous tense if the action takes place in the present; and use the Simple Past tense if the action took place in the past. For example:

Right now, he .... sheep.

Right now, he is raising sheep.

Last night he .... their expectations.

Last night he raised their expectations.

The price of housing .... now.

The price of housing is rising now.

Last year she .... at six o'clock every morning.

Last year she rose at six o'clock every morning.

1. Last night, when we heard the news, our hopes.........................
2. Last year they ....six hundred dollars by selling chocolate bars.
3. Now they .... the price of gasoline.
4. The price of gold .... yesterday.
5. At the moment, he .... corn.
6. Right now mist .... from the water.
7. Last week, you .... a difficult question.
8. The temperature .... at the moment.
9. Now he .... his hat.
10. The water level .... last week.

Answers to exercise 3:

1. rose
2. raised
3. are raising
4. rose
5. is raising
6. is rising
7. raised
8. is rising
9. is raising
10. rose

4. In the following sentences, the direct objects of the verbs are printed in bold type. In addition, each sentence contains an adverb or adverb phrase indicating time. Depending upon whether or not there is a direct object, complete each sentence using either to set or to sit, as appropriate. Use the

Present Continuous tense if the action takes place in the present; and use the Simple Past tense if the action took place in the past. For example:

Now they .... the table.

Now they are setting the table.

Last night we .... our alarm clock for six o'clock.

Last night we set our alarm clock for six o'clock.

At the moment, the cat .... on top of the car.

At the moment, the cat is sitting on top of the car.

Yesterday he …………….. at his desk all afternoon.

Yesterday he sat at his desk all afternoon.

1. Right now they .... down to a good meal.
2. Yesterday they ....the empty bottles on the front step.
3. At the moment, she .... in front of the fire.
4. Now we .... the suitcases on the moving belt.
5. In ancient times, King Arthur's knights ....at the Round Table.
6. Yesterday morning the doctor ....the broken bone.
7. Right now, we .... around the table.
8. He ....a good example last week, by studying hard.
9. Now she .... her watch to the correct time.
10. Yesterday afternoon we ....at the end of the dock, in the sun.

Answers to exercise 4:

1. are sitting
2. set
3. is sitting
4. are setting
5. sat
6. set
7. are sitting
8. set
9. is setting
10. sat

5. In the following sentences, the direct objects of the verbs are printed in bold type. Paying attention to whether or not there is a direct object, for each sentence, choose the correct verb from the pair given in brackets, and

complete the sentence using the Present Perfect tense of the verb. For example:

I .... two blankets on the bed. (to lay, to lie)

I have laid two blankets on the bed.

He .... down for half an hour. (to lay, to lie)

He has lain down for half an hour.

They .... the flag. (to raise, to rise)

They have raised the flag.

Our opinion of them .... (to raise, to rise)

Our opinion of them has risen.

We .... the electric train in motion. (to set, to sit)

We have set the electric train in motion.

She .... just …………... down. (to set, to sit)

She has just sat down.

1. They ....a limit of four cartons per customer. (to set, to sit)
2. We .... our plans carefully. (to lay, to lie)
3. You ....very early for the past three weeks. (to raise, to rise)
4. We .... in the car all afternoon. (to set, to sit)
5. They .... four children. (to raise, to rise)
6. He .... a record for endurance. (to set, to sit)
7. I .... awake half the night. (to lay, to lie)
8. They .... the table. (to lay, to lie)
9. She .... still for fifteen minutes. (to set, to sit)
10. You .... your standards. (to raise, to rise)
11. Your standards .... (to raise, to rise)
12. Your gloves ....on the table all week. (to lay, to lie)

Answers to exercise 5:

1. have set
2. have laid
3. have risen
4. have sat
5. have raised
6. has set
7. have lain
8. have laid
9. has sat

10. have raised
11. have risen
12. have lain

6. Rewrite each of the following sentences, omitting the underlined preposition which precedes the indirect object, and making the necessary changes in word order. For example:

I bought a rose for the singer.

I bought the singer a rose.

She gave an apple to the boy.

She gave the boy an apple.

1. I handed the book to the student.
2. He wrote a letter to the twins.
3. he made a scarf for the girl.
4. I told the story to the audience.
5. We paid the money to the dentist.
6. He sent a reply to the doctor.
7. We offered the job to the students.
8. She told the news to her friends.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. I handed the student the book.
2. He wrote the twins a letter.
3. She made the girl a scarf.
4. I told the audience the story.
5. We paid the dentist the money.
6. He sent the doctor a reply.
7. We offered the students the job.
8. She told her friends the news.

7. Rewrite each of the following sentences, inserting the preposition to before the indirect object, and making the necessary changes in word order. For example:

I wrote the president a letter.

I wrote a letter to the president.

They showed the visitor the garden.

They showed the garden to the visitor.

1. We sent the reporters a photograph.
2. They mailed the agency a postcard.

3. I paid the manager the fee.
4. We sold the students the doughnuts.
5. You read the teacher the story.
6. She mailed the seamstress the material.
7. I sent the workers a message.
8. He offered his guest the juice.

Answers to exercise 7:

1. We sent a photograph to the reporters.
2. They mailed a postcard to the agency.
3. I paid the fee to the manager.
4. We sold the doughnuts to the students.
5. You read the story to the teacher.
6. She mailed the material to the seamstress.
7. I sent a message to the workers.
8. He offered the juice to his guest.

(12) The passive voice

EXERCISES for Chapter (12)

1. Change the following affirmative statements into questions. For example:

You are required to attend the meeting.

Are you required to attend the meeting?

She is being ignored. Is she being ignored?

1. They should be notified.
2. He might have been allowed to come.
3. You had been told about it.
4. They will be needed.
5. It has been adjourned.
6. They were being prepared.

Answers to exercise 1:

1. Should they be notified?
2. Might he have been allowed to leave?
3. Had you been told about it?
4. Will they be needed?
5. Has it been adjourned?
6. Were they being prepared?

2. Change the following affirmative statements into negative statements. For example:

They would have been instructed to join us.

They would not have been instructed to join us.

It was sent on time. It was not sent on time.

1. We could have been seen from the island.
2. It is being dealt with satisfactorily.
3. They were being kept under observation.
4. You will be held responsible.
5. They were expected at six o'clock.
6. He will be asked to participate.

Answers to exercise 2:

1. We could not have been seen from the island.
2. It is not being dealt with satisfactorily.

3. They were not being kept under observation.
4. You will not be held responsible.
5. They were not expected at six o'clock.
6. He will not be asked to participate.

3. Change the following affirmative statements into negative questions. Do not use contractions in this exercise. For example:

He is respected by everyone. Is he not respected by everyone?

She should be consulted. Should she not be consulted?

1. They were recognized immediately.
2. We were being assisted by volunteers.
3. It had been delivered.
4. They should have been guarded more carefully.
5. We will be given financial assistance.
6. It had been organized by the club members.

Answers to exercise 3:

1. Were they not recognized immediately?
2. Were we not being assisted by volunteers?
3. Had it not been delivered?
4. Should they not have been guarded more carefully?
5. Will we not be given financial assistance?
6. Had it not been organized by the club members?

4. For each of the following sentences, first indicate the tense of the underlined verb, and then change the verb from the Active Voice to the corresponding tense in the Passive Voice. Take note of the resulting change in the meaning of the sentence. For example:

They drive to work at seven o'clock every morning.

Simple Present: They are driven to work at seven o'clock every morning.

Did he notice?

Simple Past: Was he noticed?

She is not telling the truth.

Present Continuous: he is not being told the truth.

We have sent a message.

Present Perfect: We have been sent a message.

I will pay.

Simple Future: I will be paid.

1. Do they expect to leave?.......................................

2. He is giving instructions......................................
3. They have moved to a new location...................................... ..
4. She will fly to London...................................... ......
5. He has offered a discount.................................... ....
6. They have stopped.................................... ....
7. Will you have given the order?...................................... .....
8. We sent a favorable reply.................................... ....
9. We were teaching German.................................... ....
10. I understand... ...
11. He is offering free advice...................................... ......
12. She will rush to the reception...................................... ....

Answers to exercise 4:

1. Simple Present: Are they expected to leave?
2. Present Continuous: He is being given instructions.
3. Present Perfect: They have been moved to a new location.
4. Simple Future: She will be flown to London.
5. Present Perfect: He has been offered a discount.
6. Present Perfect: They have been stopped.
7. Future Perfect: Will you have been given the order?
8. Simple Past: We were sent a favorable reply.
9. Past Continuous: We were being taught German.
10. Simple Present: I am understood.
11. Present Continuous: He is being offered free advice.
12. Simple Future: She will be rushed to the reception.

5. For each of the following sentences, first indicate the tense of the underlined verb, and then change the verb from the Passive Voice to the corresponding tense in the Active Voice. Take note of the resulting change in the meaning of the sentence. For example:

We are paid regularly.

Simple Present: We pay regularly.

She is not assisted every day.

Simple Present: She does not assist every day.

Was he not being flown to Boston?

Past Continuous: Was he not flying to Boston?

It has been grown here for the past twenty years.

Present Perfect: It has grown here for the past twenty years.

Might they be called at nine o'clock?

Simple conjugation with might: Might they call at nine o'clock?

1. We can be heard easily ....
2. She is being given advice ....
3. Were they not flown over the lake? ....
4. I had been transferred to another department.
5. He is being stopped ....
6. We have been sent a letter ....
7. He is not being taught music theory ....
8. Should they have been flown to their next destination? ....
9. They will be watched constantly ....
10. We had been driven to the beach this morning.................. ...
11. Has he been checked into the hotel? ....
12. Could I have been told the news yesterday?........................ ..

Answers to exercise 5:

1. Simple conjugation with can: We can hear easily.
2. Present Continuous: She is giving advice.
3. Simple Past: Did they not fly over the lake?
4. Past Perfect: I had transferred to another department.
5. Present Continuous: He is stopping.
6. Present Perfect: We have sent a letter.
7. Present Continuous: He is not teaching music theory.
8. Perfect conjugation with should: Should they have flown to their next destination?
9. Simple Future: They will watch constantly.
10. Past Perfect: We had driven to the beach this morning.
11. Present Perfect: Has he checked into the hotel?
12. Perfect conjugation with could: Could I have told the news yesterday?

6. Change the underlined verbs in the following sentences from the Active Voice to the corresponding tenses in the Passive Voice. Preserve the meaning of the sentences by using the preposition by and making the necessary changes in word order. For example:

The teenager rowed the boat.

The boat was rowed by the teenager.

The girl is riding the horse.

The horse is being ridden by the girl.
The student has prepared the lunch.
The lunch has been prepared by the student.
The president will thank the members.
The members will be thanked by the president.
The children can understand the poem.
The poem can be understood by the children.

1. The woman founded the club.
2. This entry took the prize.
3. The girl is playing the guitar.
4. The mailman has delivered the letter.
5. The chauffeur can drive the car.
6. The child chose the hat.
7. The cat chased the mouse.
8. The workers will weave the carpet.
9. The stranger could have bought the hiking boots.
10. The dealer has sold the car.
11. The dog splashed the water.
12. The man has watered the garden.

Answers to exercise 6:

1. The club was founded by the woman.
2. The prize was taken by this entry.
3. The guitar is being played by the girl.
4. The letter has been delivered by the mailman.
5. The car can be driven by the chauffeur.
6. The hat was chosen by the child.
7. The mouse was chased by the cat.
8. The carpet will be woven by the workers.
9. The hiking boots could have been bought by the stranger.
10. The car has been sold by the dealer.
11. The water was splashed by the dog.
12. The garden has been watered by the man.

7. Change the underlined verbs in the following sentences from the Passive Voice to the corresponding tenses in the Active Voice. Preserve the meaning of the sentences by omitting the preposition by and making the necessary changes in word order. For example:

The news was heard by everyone.
Everyone heard the news.
The orders were followed by the officials.
The officials followed the orders.
The money is being counted by the cashier.
The cashier is counting the money.
The ducks have been fed by the tourists.
The tourists have fed the ducks.
The flowers will be photographed by the naturalist.
The naturalist will photograph the flowers.

1. The bill was paid by the manager.
2. The bread was made by the baker.
3. The wiring must be checked by the electrician.
4. The crow was being scolded by the squirrel.
5. The book was written by a doctor.
6. The house was painted by a student.
7. The seeds were taken by the chickadee.
8. The cider has been drunk by the guest.
9. The mail is opened by the secretary.
10. The ingredients have been measured by the cooks.
11. The bird was seen by the photographers.
12. His work will be published by the magazine.

Answers to exercise 7:

1. The manager paid the bill.
2. The baker made the bread.
3. The electrician must check the wiring.
4. The squirrel was scolding the crow.
5. A doctor wrote the book.
6. A student painted the house.
7. The chickadee took the seeds.
8. The guest has drunk the cider.
9. The secretary opens the mail.
10. The cooks have measured the ingredients.
11. The photographers saw the bird.
12. The magazine will publish his work.

8. Complete the following sentences using the Simple Present Subjunctive of the Passive Voice of the verbs shown in brackets. For example:

She ordered that the most important details .....known. (to make)

She ordered that the most important details be made known.

He advises that the plane .... at a high altitude. (to fly)

He advises that the plane be flown at a high altitude.

1. They demand that the change of plans .... at nine o'clock. (to announce)
2. We ask that permission to compete ....to everyone. (to grant)
3. It is important that their accomplishments .... (to recognize)
4. It is crucial that we .... of any change. (to advise)
5. He asks that his affairs .... in order. (to put)
6. They requested that their qualifications .... (to accept)
7. We insist that he not .... his rights. (to deny)
8. It is necessary that the requirements .... (to meet)
9. She requests that the most experienced candidate ……….…..... (to choose)
10. It is recommended that care ....in making the repairs. (to take)
11. He insists that smoking .... (to forbid)
12. It is essential that supplies ....well in advance. (to order)

Answers to exercise 8:

1. be announced
2. be granted
3. be recognized
4. be advised
5. be put
6. be accepted
7. be denied
8. be met
9. be chosen
10. be taken
11. be forbidden
12. be ordered

(13) Nouns: The Formation Of Plurals

EXERCISES for Chapter (13)

1. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The room is large. The rooms are large.

The letter was delivered yesterday.

The letters were delivered yesterday.

The tourist has a map.

The tourists have a map.

The girl studies hard.

The girls study hard.

1. The book was heavy.
2. The train has left.
3. The bird was singing.
4. The door was closed by the superintendent.
5. The shoe fits well.
6. he parcel is being opened.
7. The newspaper is read by many people.
8. The flame is flickering.
9. The ship has been sighted.
10. The street was being cleaned.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 1:

1. The books were heavy.
2. The trains have left.
3. The birds were singing.
4. The doors were closed by the superintendent.
5. The shoes fit well.
6. The parcels are being opened.
7. The newspapers are read by many people.
8. The flames are flickering.
9. The ships have been sighted.
10. The streets were being cleaned.

2. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The beach is supervised by lifeguards.

The beaches are supervised by lifeguards.

The singer performs twice a week.

The singers perform twice a week.

The class was visiting the museum.

The classes were visiting the museum.

The vase has been filled with flowers.

The vases have been filled with flowers.

1. The box was empty.
2. The river flows to the sea.
3. The bush has grown in the last two months.
4. The hat was on sale.
5. The bench is made of stone.
6. The plant has been watered.
7. The hedge is being trimmed.
8. The process was invented last year.
9. The sketch is nearly finished.
10. The breeze was warm.
11. The wall is being painted.
12. The church is two hundred years old.
13. The bridge will soon be completed.
14. The carpet has been cleaned.
15. The branch is covered with ice.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 2:

1. The boxes were empty.
2. The rivers flow to the sea.
3. The bushes have grown in the last two months.
4. The hats were on sale.
5. The benches are made of stone.
6. The plants have been watered.
7. The hedges are being trimmed.
8. The processes were invented last year.
9. The sketches are nearly finished.
10. The breezes were warm.

11. The walls are being painted.
12. The churches are two hundred years old.
13. The bridges will soon be completed.
14. The carpets have been cleaned.
15. The branches are covered with ice.

3. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The party was held downtown.

The parties were held downtown.

The society accomplishes a great deal.

The societies accomplish a great deal.

The day seemed long.

The days seemed long.

1. The berry was red.
2. The key was difficult to use.
3. The valley is very beautiful.
4. The eddy can be dangerous for swimmers.
5. The journey was undertaken by pilgrims.
6. The daisy was picked by the child.
7. The monkey is considered to be sacred.
8. The gully is full of water.
9. he boy ran to school.
10. The facility is open to the public.
11. The secretary works overtime.
12. The toy was being sold at a discount.
13. The tray is being piled high with dishes.
14. The dairy opens at nine o'clock.
15. The chimney has been repaired.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 3

1. The berries were red.
2. The keys were difficult to use.
3. The valleys are very beautiful.
4. The eddies can be dangerous for swimmers.
5. The journeys were undertaken by pilgrims.
6. The daisies were picked by the child.

7. The monkeys are considered to be sacred.
8. The gullies are full of water.
9. The boys ran to school.
10. The facilities are open to the public.
11. The secretaries work overtime.
12. The toys were being sold at a discount.
13. The trays are being piled high with dishes.
14. The dairies open at nine o clock.
15. The chimneys have been repaired.

4. Rewrite each of the following sentences, adding the word <u>two</u> before the proper noun. Change the proper noun to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

Smith lives in this building.

Two Smiths live in this building.

Harry was nominated for the position.

Two Harrys were nominated for the position.

Alex is here.

Two Alexes are here.

1. Maurice is volunteering.
2. Jones was ordered to leave.
3. Harrison owns land.
4. Sandy has telephoned us.
5. Susan met us.
6. Trish is studying French.
7. Pat does well in school.
8. Liz has arrived early.
9. Jacky was making the cake.
10. Russ knows all the answers.
11. Eric is planning the party.
12. Terry has difficulty understanding Spanish.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 4:

1. Two Maurices are volunteering.
2. Two Joneses were ordered to leave.
3. Two Harrisons own land.
4. Two Sandys have telephoned us.

5. Two Susans met us.
6. Two Trishes are studying French.
7. Two Pats do well in school.
8. Two Lizes have arrived early.
9. Two Jackys were making the cake.
10. Two Russes know all the answers.
11. Two Erics are planning the party.
12. Two Terries have difficulty understanding Spanish.

5. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The knife has been sharpened.

The knives have been sharpened.

The reef attracts tourists.

The reefs attract tourists.

The thief will be caught.

The thieves will be caught.

1. The leaf has turned red.
2. The fife had the solo.
3. The calf is hungry.
4. The scarf kept him warm.
5. The knife will be useful.
6. The giraffe was eating leaves.
7. The cliff is being explored by geologists.
8. he wolf howls every night.
9. The loaf is rising.
10. The chief will decide.
11. The shelf is being used.
12. The proof is convincing.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 5:

1. The leaves have turned red.
2. The fifes had the solo.
3. The calves are hungry.
4. The scarfs kept him warm. or The scarves kept him warm.
5. The knives will be useful.
6. The giraffes were eating the leaves.

7. The cliffs are being explored by geologists.
8. The wolves howl every night.
9. The loaves are rising.
10. The chiefs will decide.
11. The shelves are being used.
12. The proofs are convincing.

6. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The hero was enthusiastically welcomed.

The heroes were enthusiastically welcomed.

The studio is used by many artists.

The studios are used by many artists.

1. The radio is broadcasting news every hour.
2. The tomato was being baked.
3. The mosquito woke us up.
4. The soprano performed with the orchestra.
5. The solo was played by the violinist.
6. The archipelago lies off the coast of South America.
7. The silo is used for storing corn.
8. The potato has been boiled.
9. The volcano is not active.
10. The casino was open until one o'clock in the morning.
11. The innuendo should be ignored.
12. The ratio has been favorable.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 6:

1. The radios are broadcasting news every hour.
2. The tomatoes were being baked.
3. The mosquitoes woke us up.
4. The sopranos performed with the orchestra.
5. The solos were played by the violinist.
6. The archipelagoes lie off the coast of South America.
7. The silos are used for storing corn.
8. The potatoes have been boiled.
9. The volcanoes are not active.
10. The casinos were open until one o'clock in the morning.

11. The innuendoes should be ignored.

12. The ratios have been favorable.

7. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The hypothesis is still tentative.

The hypotheses are still tentative.

The nebula has been studied by many scientists.

The nebulae have been studied by many scientists.

The thesis will have been reviewed by experts.

The theses will have been reviewed by experts.

1. The synopsis is accurate.

2. The phenomenon surprised us.

3. The stratum contains fossils.

4. The analysis was proved correct.

5. The crisis has caused concern.

6. The spectrum includes many different colors of light.

7. The axis of rotation will be investigated.

8. The stimulus has been found to be effective.

9. The criterion was used to judge which proposals should be accepted.

10. The oasis is visited by many travelers.

11. The honorarium is being presented today.

12. The parenthesis was omitted.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 7:

1. The synopses are accurate.

2. The phenomena surprised us.

3. The strata contain fossils.

4. The analyses were proved correct.

5. The crises have caused concern.

6. The spectra include many different colors of light.

7. The axes of rotation will be investigated.

8. The stimuli have been found to be effective.

9. The criteria were used to judge which proposals should be accepted.

10. The oases are visited by many travelers.

11. The honoraria are being presented today.
12. The parentheses were omitted.

8. For each of the following sentences, change the subject of the verb to the plural, and change the verb so that it agrees with its subject. For example:

The goose likes to eat daisies.

The geese like to eat daisies.

The ox was being led to the barn.

The oxen were being led to the barn.

The salmon has been caught by the bear.

The salmon have been caught by the bear.

1. The child is happy.
2. The sheep has been sheared.
3. The man was being given directions.
4. The deer is eating the hay.
5. The woman has visited us.
6. The mouse makes a great deal of noise at night.
7. The gentleman would like to have breakfast early.
8. The louse is a nuisance.
9. Your foot is size ten.
10. The fisherman has had a good season.
11. The tooth needs to be filled.
12. The policewoman was directing traffic.

ANSWERS TO EXERCISE 8:

1. The children are happy.
2. The sheep have been sheared.
3. The men were being given directions.
4. The deer are eating the hay.
5. The women have visited us.
6. The mice make a great deal of noise at night.
7. The gentlemen would like to have breakfast early.
8. The lice are a nuisance.
9. Your feet are size ten.
10. The fishermen have had a good season.
11. The teeth need to be filled.
12. The policewomen were directing traffic.

(14) Singular countable nouns

EXERCISES for Chapter (14)

1. Rewrite each of the following sentences, changing the subject of the verb to the singular, inserting a or an before the subject, as appropriate, and changing the verb to agree with the subject. For example:

Violins are difficult to play.

A violin is difficult to play.

Unions have been formed.

A union has been formed.

Answers are always provided.

An answer is always provided.

Heirs have many friends.

An heir has many friends.

1. Avocados are expensive.
2. Windows are an important feature of an artist's studio.
3. Umbrellas should not be used during a thunderstorm.
4. Horses can be useful in the mountains.
5. Cashews are a type of nut.
6. Onions can be used for flavoring soup.
7. Trucks have many uses.
8. Hours passed.
9. Sentences should have proper punctuation.
10. Escalators are very convenient.
11. Uniforms must be worn.
12. Boxes were found on the floor.
13. Marshes lie beyond the city boundary.
14. Ideas can be valuable.
15. Eggs are a good source of protein.

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. An avocado is
2. A window is
3. An umbrella should not be used
4. A horse can be

5. A cashew is
6. An onion can be used
7. A truck has
8. An hour passed
9. A sentence should have
10. An escalator is
11. A uniform must be worn
12. A box was found
13. A marsh lies
14. An idea can be
15. An egg is

2. Fill in each blank with either the indefinite article (<u>a</u> or <u>an</u>) or the definite article (<u>the</u>). Use a or an with nouns referring to people or things which have <u>not</u> been mentioned previously, and use the with nouns referring to people or things which <u>have</u> been mentioned previously.

*I had never visited Seretnay Park before. Last week I went to .... park and chose .... tour to take. There were twenty tourists and one guide. …....... guide asked what we wanted to see. I said I had never seen .... eagle, and I would like to see one. …...... child on .... tour said he would like to see …...... beaver, since he had heard there were many in .... park. .... guide said he would do his best. First he led us along .... road, and then we turned off onto .... path. To our right was .... marshy pond.

*Suddenly .... child who had spoken before shouted, "Look! I see .... beaver!" Of course .... beaver was startled. It slapped its tail and disappeared into pond.

*Our guide pointed to .... pile of sticks and said, "That's where .... beaver lives. That's his house." I had my camera with me, and took .... photograph of .... house.

*As we were standing there, ... guide was looking across .... pond through .... small telescope. After a minute, he tapped my shoulder and handed me .... telescope. He pointed to .... tall tree and said, "Do you see that white speck? That's .... bald eagle".

*I had difficulty focusing .... telescope, but finally I saw .... eagle. As I watched, ... eagle spread its wings and soared over the water.

*It was .... wonderful experience for me to see some of the wild creatures that live in .... park.

Answers to Exercise 2:

the park, a tour. The guide. an eagle. A child, the tour, a beaver, the park. The guide. a road, a path, a marshy pond. the child, a beaver. the beaver. the pond. a pile, the beaver. a photograph, the house. the guide, the pond, a small telescope. the telescope. a tall tree. a bald eagle. the telescope, the eagle. the eagle. a wonderful experience, the park.

3. Fill in each blank with a, an or the. Be prepared to justify your choice. For example:

......moon is full tonight.

The moon is full tonight.

He is ..... singer.

He is a singer.

Please sit in ..... center of the boat.

Please sit in the center of the boat.

The room costs twenty dollars ..... day.

The room costs twenty dollars a day.

………wheel is considered one of mankind's most important inventions.

The wheel is considered one of mankind's most important inventions.

1. His aunt is .... teacher.
2. .... architect is trained in design, drafting, and economics.
3. .... ostrich is the world's largest bird.
4. Buses pass this point two or three times .... hour.
5. Plants gain energy from the light of .... sun.
6. I woke up in .... middle of the night.
7. She is .... doctor.
8. .... seal is an excellent swimmer.
9. Our eyes usually blink several times .... minute.
10. At .... equator, sunrise occurs at the same time each day.
11. He is .... author.
12. They wanted to hear .... end of the story.
13. Such a severe storm occurs only once .... decade.
14. Mount Everest is tallest mountain in .... world.
15. There is an index at .... back of the book.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. a [profession]
2. An [general statement]
3. The [considered as a class]
4. an [per]
5. the [obvious what is meant]
6. the [unique]
7. a [profession]
8. A [general statement]
9. a [per]
10. the [unique]
11. an [profession]
12. the [unique]
13. a [per]
14. the [unique], the [obvious what is meant]
15. the [unique[

(15) Plural countable nouns

EXERCISES for Chapter (15)

1. rewrite the following general statements using singular nouns. Make sure that the verbs agree with their subjects. For example:

Engineers must be familiar with computers.

An engineer must be familiar with computers.

Trees produce oxygen.

A tree produces oxygen.

1. Automobiles should be kept in good repair.
2. Bats locate insects by means of sonar.
3. Diplomats should, if possible, be multilingual.
4. Hats are useful in cold weather.
5. Physicists must study a great deal.
6. Elephants can be dangerous.

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. An automobile should be kept
2. A bat locates
3. A diplomat should be
4. A hat is
5. A physicist must study
6. An elephant can be

2. Rewrite the following general statements using plural nouns. Make sure that the verbs agree with their subjects. For example:

A bicycle is a convenient means of transportation.

Bicycles are a convenient means of transportation.

A secretary should be proficient in spelling and grammar.

Secretaries should be proficient in spelling and grammar.

1. A sportsman needs to remain calm under pressure.
2. An eagle has good eyesight.
3. A conference requires careful planning.
4. A rock is composed of minerals.
5. A potato is rich in starch.
6. An omelette is made of eggs and other ingredients.

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. Sportsmen need
2. Eagles have
3. Conferences require
4. Rocks are composed
5. Potatoes are
6. Omelettes are made

3. Rewrite the following general statements using singular nouns. Make sure that the verbs agree with their subjects. For example:

Frogs are amphibians.

A frog is an amphibian.

Wrenches are tools.

A wrench is a tool.

1. Pines are evergreens.
2. Otters are mammals.
3. Computers are machines.
4. Crabs are crustaceans.
5. Crickets are insects.
6. Oaks are hardwoods.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. A pine is an evergreen.
2. An otter is a mammal.
3. A computer is a machine.
4. A crab is a crustacean.
5. A cricket is an insect.
6. An oak is a hardwood.

4. Rewrite the following general statements using plural nouns. Make sure that the verbs agree with their subjects. For example:

A robin is a bird.

Robins are birds.

A refrigerator is an appliance.

Refrigerators are appliances.

1. A schooner is a ship.
2. A mallard is a duck.
3. A rhododendron is a bush.
4. A beech is a tree.

5. A kangaroo is a marsupial.
6. An emerald is a gem.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. Schooners are ships.
2. Mallards are ducks.
3. Rhododendrons are bushes.
4. Beeches are trees.
5. Kangaroos are marsupials.
6. Emeralds are gems.

5. Paying attention to whether the people and things referred to have been **mentioned previously, fill in each blank with a, an or the, or leave the blank empty if no determiner is required.**

*I once had the chance to see ..... Chinese opera. It was very exciting. As well as ..... singers, there were ..... dancers and ..... acrobats. ..... acrobats staged ..... fights. During ..... fights, some of ..... acrobats wielded ..... swords, and others leaped over ..... swords. Many of .....dancers carried scarves. .....dancers .....flourished .....scarves to make .....patterns in the air.

*Behind ..... screen was a group of ..... musicians. ..... musicians played various oriental instruments. ..... instruments included ..... drums, ... cymbals, ... flutes and ..... gong. ..... flutes usually played the melody, and ..... gong was sounded at particularly exciting moments.

*Of course there were ..... hero and ..... heroine. ..... hero had to rescue ..... heroine from ..... magician. ..... hero and ..... heroine had both proved their courage by the end of ..... opera.

Answers to Exercise 5:

a Chinese opera. .... singers, ... dancers, ... acrobats. The acrobats, ... fights. the fights, the acrobats, ... swords, the swords, the dancers, ... scarves. The dancers, the scarves, ... patterns. a screen, ... musicians. The musicians. The instruments, ... drums, cymbals, ... flutes, a gong. The flutes, the gong. a hero, a heroine. The hero, the heroine, a magician. The hero, the heroine the opera.

6. Fill in each blank with the or leave it empty, as appropriate. Be prepared to justify your choices. For example:

Those participants are .... lawyers.

Those participants are lawyers.

.... eagles are birds of prey.
Eagles are birds of prey.
.... deaf have their own language.
The deaf have their own language.
.... Dutch are members of the European Union.
The Dutch are members of the European Union.
.................................planets circle the sun.
The planets circle the sun.

1. .... English have a reputation for being animal lovers.
2. .... wounded were treated immediately.
3. His friends are ……………….…...... scientists.
4. .... crows are black.
5. .... stars are covered by clouds.
6. ………….................. French make excellent pastries.
7. Two of the women are .... reporters.
8. .... turtles are reptiles.
9. .... wealthy generally have a good knowledge of finance.
10. .... Americans like to watch television.
11. They are ………………...... businessmen.

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. The [nationality ending in sh]
2. The [considered as a class]
3. ……... [a profession]
4. ……... [general statement]
5. The [obvious what is meant]
6. The [nationality ending in ch]
7. ……... [profession]
8. ……... [general statement]
9. The [considered as a class]
10. .... [nationality not ending in ch, se or sh]
11. ……... [profession[

7. Paying attention to the rules for the use of the with proper nouns, fill in the blanks with the or leave them empty, as appropriate. For example:
.........Rick is one of .... Smiths who live on our street.
Rick is one of the Smiths who live on our street.

............Channel Islands lie south of ……….. England.

The Channel Islands lie south of England.

............Rhine River flows through .... Lake Constance.

The Rhine River flows through Lake Constance.

............Isle of Man lies in .... Irish Sea.

The Isle of Man lies in the Irish Sea.

Part of .... New York City is situated on .... Long Island.

Part of New York City is situated on Long Island.

1. …… Hawaiian Islands are in the middle of ....Pacific Ocean.
2. .... Salt Lake City is the capital of Utah.
3. .... London lies on .... Thames River.
4. ....Suez Canal connects ....Mediterranean Sea with Red Sea.
5. ......Lake Huron and…...Lake Erie are two of …....Great Lakes.
6. .... Calcutta lies north of .... Bay of Bengal.
7. ……......North Sea separates British Isles from…......Norway and ....Denmark.
8. .... Bay of Biscay lies to the west of .... France.
9. .... Orkney Islands are in the north of .... Scotland.
10. .... Anticosti Island lies in .... Gulf of St. Lawrence.
11. Part of .... Sahara Desert lies in ……….…... Algeria.
12. ....Gerry, one of ....Johnsons, lives on ....Belleview Street.
13. .... Mount Kilimanjaro is south-east of .... Lake Victoria.
14. .... Vancouver Island lies off the west coast of …….. Canada.
15. .... Serengeti National Park lies in .... Tanzania.

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. The Hawaiian Islands, the Pacific Ocean
2. .... Salt Lake City, ... Utah
3. …………... London, the Thames River
4. The Suez Canal, the Mediterranean Sea, the Red Sea
5. …………... Lake Huron. .... Lake Erie, the Great Lakes
6. …………….. Calcutta, the Bay of Bengal
7. The North Sea, the British Isles, ….... Norway, ... Denmark
8. The Bay of Biscay, …………. France
9. The Orkney Islands, ... Scotland
10. ………….. Anticosti Island the Gulf of St. Lawrence

11. <u>the</u> Sahara Desert, …………..... Algeria
12. .... Gerry, <u>the</u> Johnsons, ………….. Belleview Street
13. …………….. Mount Kilimanjaro, ………….. Lake Victoria
14. …………….. Vancouver Island, …………... Canada
15. .... Serengeti National Park, ………….. Tanzania

8. Paying attention to whether a singular or plural verb should be used, complete each of the following sentences by filling in the blank with <u>is</u> or <u>are</u>. For example:

My scissors .... very sharp.

My scissors <u>are</u> very sharp.

One pair of scissors …………..... not enough for the whole class.

One pair of scissors <u>is</u> not enough for the whole class.

Five pairs of scissors …………..... sufficient for a small class.

Five pairs of scissors <u>are</u> sufficient for a small class.

1. Her jeans .... white.
2. Only one pair of jeans .... clean.
3. Three pairs of jeans .... being washed.
4. A good pair of pliers .... handy for repairing a bicycle.
5. His pliers .... equipped with a sharp edge for cutting wire.
6. Several pairs of pliers .... on sale.

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. are 2. is 3. are 4. is 5. are 6. are

(16) Uncountable nouns

EXERCISES for Chapter (16)

1. For the following sentences, fill in the blanks with a or an or leave the blanks empty, as appropriate. Fill in the blanks with a or an before countable nouns, and leave them empty before uncountable nouns. For example:

..........bird is singing outside the window .

A bird is singing outside the window.

........copper is used in making electrical wiring.

Copper is used in making electrical wiring.

1. ....air is made up of elements such as ....oxygen and...... nitrogen.
2. …..... book is lying on the floor.
3. .... Russian is a difficult language.
4. …..... onion is …………... vegetable.
5. .... butter and .... cream are made from ……..... milk.
6. .... letter has been delivered to the wrong house.
7. .... child is playing on the sidewalk.
8. .... asbestos is a fireproof material.
9. …..... tree is growing outside the house.
10. .... curiosity is considered a sign of .... intelligence.
11. They want to buy …….…... camera.
12. …….. egg was added to the soup.
13. .... rain is expected this evening.
14. The farmers wished for ……..... peace and .... prosperity.
15. .... bicycle is parked in front of the store.

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. .... Air, ... oxygen, ... nitrogen
2. A book
3. ....Russian
4. An onion, a vegetable
5. ....Butter, ...cream, ...milk
6. A letter
7. A child
8. ....Asbestos

9. A tree
10. ....Curiosity, ...intelligence
11. a camera
12. An egg
13. ....Rain
14. ....peace, ...prosperity
15. A bicycle

2. Paying attention to whether the nouns in the following paragraphs are countable or uncountable, and to whether or not the nouns refer to things which have been mentioned before, fill in the blanks with a or the, or leave the blanks empty, as appropriate.

*Phil Jones was .... prospector, who was looking for .... gold. He had to travel a long way, crossing ..... mountains and .... streams to reach his destination.

*Previously, he had been .... miner and had mined ..... copper and ..... coal. But .... copper had given out, and mining .... coal was dangerous work. When he had heard about ..... gold in .... mountains, Phil had left his job and traveled west. He knew he would need ..... courage and ..... determination to reach his goal.

*One evening he camped beside ..... stream. When he tested .... stream, he found there was a small amount of glittering gold dust in it. As usual, Phil made ..... fire to prepare his evening meal. He took .... flour and ..... salt from his knapsack, and got ..... water from .... stream. Then he mixed ..... salt with ..... flour, and gradually added ..... water, to make ..... pancakes over ..... fire.

*As ..... fire died away, Phil looked up and down ..... stream. Expecting to see only ..... darkness, to his surprise, he saw .... lights from many small fires. He knew they must be .... fires of other prospectors. "I've reached end of my journey", he thought. Now he was in the goldfields, and with ..... luck, he would find ..... gold he had come to seek.

Answers to Exercise 2:

a prospector, ...gold. ....mountains, ...streams. a miner, ...copper, ...coal. the copper, the coal. the gold, the mountains, ...courage, ...determination. a stream. the stream. a fire. ....lour, ... salt, ……..... water, the stream. the salt, the flour the water, ...

pancakes, <u>the</u> fire. <u>the</u> fire, <u>the</u> stream. .... darkness, ... lights. <u>the</u> fires. <u>the</u> end. ……….. luck, <u>the</u> gold.

3. For each of the following sentences, change the word <u>one</u> to <u>two</u>, put the subject of the verb into the plural, and make sure that the verb agrees with its subject. For example:

One bar of soap will be provided.

Two bars of soap will be provided.

One bag of flour is on the counter.

Two bags of flour are on the counter.

1. One piece of luggage is allowed per passenger.
2. One bottle of water is enough.
3. One jar of honey is larger than the others.
4. One piece of furniture will be delivered.
5. One grain of rice has fallen onto the table.
6. One bucket of sand was needed to build the sand castle.
7. One cup of sugar should be mixed with the flour.
8. One game of chess will be played at four o'clock.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. Two pieces of luggage are allowed
2. Two bottles of water are
3. Two jars of honey are
4. Two pieces of furniture will be delivered.
5. Two grains of rice have fallen
6. Two buckets of wand were needed
7. Two cups of sugar should be mixed
8. Two games of chess will be played

4. Fill in each blank with <u>a</u> or <u>an</u> if the noun following the blank is used as a countable noun, or leave the blank empty if the noun following the blank is used as an uncountable noun. For example:

The bowl is made of ....glass. The bowl is made of glass.

Would you like ....glass of water? Would you like a glass of water?

1. The sun gives off ....heat and ....light.
2. There is ....light suspended from the ceiling.
3. She will buy …................... paper to find out what movies are being shown.
4. .... paper can be made from ....wood or ....cloth.

5. She has a keen sense of ....honor.
6. It is ....honor to be invited to speak.
7. There is ....bed near the window.
8. He has gone to ....bed early because he is tired.
9. ....iron used in making ....steel.
10. If I had ....iron, I would press my new suit.
11. They always eat ....lunch at twelve o'clock.
12. We will pack you ....lunch to take with you.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. ....heat, ...light
2. a light
3. a paper
4. ....Paper, ...wood, ...cloth
5. ....honor
6. an honor
7. a bed
8. ....bed
9. ....Iron, ...steel
10. an iron
11. ....lunch
12. a lunch

5. Paying attention to which verbs can be followed by an infinitive and which can be followed by a gerund, for each sentence, fill in the blank with the infinitive or gerund of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

Please stop ....that! (to do)

Please stop doing that!

He has decided .... a holiday. (to take)

He has decided to take a holiday.

1. Has he finished .... the report? (to read)
2. We plan .... the concert. (to attend)
3. They will discuss .... a club. (to organize)
4. She offered .... the letter. (to write)
5. They asked .... us. (to accompany)
6. You should practise .... the speech. (to give)
7. I would suggest ....the work by next week. (to finish)

8. He has not dared .... you. (to contradict)
9. They delayed .... us. (to call)
10. She deserves .... (to succeed)
11. We forgot .... the letter. (to mail)
12. He enjoys .... (to ski)
13. They would not risk .... the bus. (to miss)
14. Do you want .... the book? (to borrow)
15. I don't mind .... (to wait)
16. Her daughter is learning .... a bicycle. (to ride)
17. It has stopped .... (to snow)
18. He is preparing .... a business. (to open)
19. They hesitated .... the invitation. (to accept)
20. I miss .... from them. (to hear)

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. reading
2. to attend
3. organizing
4. to write
5. to accompany
6. giving
7. finishing
8. to contradict
9. calling
10. to succeed
11. to mall
12. skiing
13. missing
14. to borrow
15. waiting
16. to ride
17. snowing
18. to open
19. to accept
20. hearing

(17) Nouns indicating possession and compound subjects

Exercises for chapter (17)

1. For each of the following phrases, change the noun indicating possession from the singular to the plural. For example:

the man's experiences

the men's experiences

the doctor's office

the doctors' office

1. the musician's instruments
2. the child's adventures
3. the animal's habitat
4. the workman's instructions
5. the ship's passengers
6. the pilot's vacation
7. the officer's friends

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. the musicians' instruments
2. the children's adventures
3. the animals' habitat
4. the workmen's instructions
5. the ships' passengers
6. the pilots' vacation
7. the officers' friends

2. For each of the following phrases, change the noun indicating possession from the plural to the singular. For example:

the owners' permission

the owner's permission

the mice's nest

the mouse's nest

1. the surgeons' skill

2. the policemen's warning
3. the directors' decision
4. the secretaries' correspondence
5. the eagles' aerie
6. the women's errand
7. the managers' assistants

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. the surgeon's skill
2. the policeman's warning
3. the director's decision
4. the secretary's correspondence
5. the eagle's aerie
6. the woman's errand
7. the manager's assistants

3. Show the relationships between the possessors and the things possessed by using the ending 's or the word of, as appropriate. For example:

Possessor	Thing Possessed	Indicating Possession
visitor	map	the visitor's map
stairs	top	the top of the stairs

1. woman scarf
2. children answers
3. door color
4. concert beginning
5. instructor advice
6. deficit size
7. girl tricycle
8. building height
9. hen cackling
10. boy parents
11. chair arm
12. street length

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. the woman's scarf
2. the children's answers
3. the color of the door

4. the beginning of the concert
5. the instructor's advice
6. the size of the deficit
7. the girl's tricycle
8. the height of the building
9. the hen's cackling
10. the boy's parents
11. the arm of the chair
12. the length of the street

4. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with either the singular or the plural verb form shown in brackets. Be prepared to explain why the form you have chosen is correct. For example:

The committee .... put forward a new proposal. (has, have)

The committee <u>has</u> put forward a new proposal.

In this example the committee is acting as a whole. Therefore a singular verb is used.

The committee ....disagreed on what policy to adopt. (has, have)

The committee <u>have</u> disagreed on what policy to adopt.

In this example, the members of the committee are acting as individuals. Therefore a plural verb is used.

Two tons of coal ....required. (is, are)

Two tons of coal <u>is</u> required.

In this example, the amount two tons is considered as a whole. Therefore a singular verb is used.

1. The crew .... preparing the ship to go to sea. (is, are)
2. The crew .... different levels of experience. (has, have)
3. Two pounds of butter ....too much. (is, are)
4. The class ....not agree on what should be done. (does, do)
5. The class.......contributed eighty dollars to the cause. (has, have)
6. Three ounces of gold ....worth more than three ounces of copper. (is, are)
7. The group……….....decided to hold a meeting once a month. (has, have)
8. The group ....varied backgrounds. (has, have)
9. Fifty cents ....the regular price. (was, were)
10. Six dollars ....been collected. (has, have)

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. is [acting as a whole]
2. have [considered individually]
3. is [considered as a whole]
4. do [acting individually]
5. has [acting as a whole]
6. is [considered as a whole]
7. has [acting as a whole]
8. have [considered individually]
9. was [considered as a whole]
10. has [considered as a whole[

5. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with either the singular or the plural verb form shown in brackets. Be prepared to explain why the form you have chosen is correct. For example:

Both the sky and the water ....blue. (is, are)

Both the sky and the water <u>are</u> blue.

The two nouns of a compound subject with <u>and</u> refer to two different things. Therefore a plural verb is used.

Wilson and Brothers ....a company dealing in antiques. (is, are)

Wilson and Brothers <u>is</u> a company dealing in antiques.

The two nouns of a compound subject with <u>and</u> refer to one thing .

Therefore a singular verb is used.

Either Richard or his uncle ....sure to be there. (is, are)

Either Richard or his uncle <u>is</u> sure to be there.

A singular noun is nearest the verb in a compound subject with <u>or</u>. Therefore a singular verb is used.

Neither the main office nor the branch offices ....open. (is, are)

Neither the main office nor the branch offices <u>are</u> open.

*A plural noun is nearest the verb in a compound subject with <u>nor</u>. Therefore a plural verb is used.

1. Either a large jar or two small jars ....required. (is, are)
2. Neither the road nor the highway ....to Pictou. (leads, lead)
3. A duck and a heron ....in the pond. (is, are)
4. Either spring or summer............a good time to visit our region. (is, are)

5. Both the bow and the arrows.........................to the instructor. (belongs, belong)

6. Neither the boats nor the raft ....in good repair. (was, were)

7. Milk and porridge ....a nutritious breakfast. (is, are)

8. Either his brother or his sister ....here. (lives, live)

9. Both boys and girls ....eligible to apply. (is, are)

10. Neither threats nor persuasion..........................proved effective. (has, have)

11. Bread and potatoes ....staple foods in many parts of North America. (is, are)

12. Either the twins or their friend ....in the class. (is, are)

13. The Picts and the Martyrs ....a book I would like to read again. (is, are)

14. Both feathers and fur............to keep animals warm. (helps, help)

15. Rope or string ....required. (is, are)

16. Either plates or saucers ....suitable. (is, are)

17. Smith and Smith ....a family business. (is, are)

18. Neither the apples nor the plums ....ripe. (was, were)

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. are [or: noun nearest the verb is plural]

2. leads [nor: noun nearest the verb is singular]

3. are [and: subject refers to more than one thing]

4. is [or: noun nearest the verb is singular]

5. belong [and: subject refers to more than one thing]

6. was [nor: noun nearest the verb is singular]

7. is [and: subject refers to a single type of breakfast]

8. lives [or: noun nearest the verb is singular]

9. are [and: subject refers to more than one thing]

10. has [or: noun nearest the verb is singular]

11. are [and: subject refers to more than one thing]

12. is [or: noun nearest the verb is singular]

13. is [and: title of a book]

14. help [and: subject refers to more than one thing]

15. is [or: noun nearest the verb is singular]

16. are [or: noun nearest the verb is plural]

17. is [and: name of a company]

18. were [nor: noun nearest the verb is plural[

6 .For each of the following sentences, place brackets around the phrase which describes the noun subject. Then, using the Simple Present tense, fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb shown in brackets. For example:

The tools, including the hammer, ...made of iron. (to be)

The tools, [including the hammer,] are made of iron.

The ferry, as well as the other boats, ...at anchor. (to be)

The ferry, [as well as the other boats,] is at anchor.

1. The letter, as well as the postcards, ...on the table. (to be)
2. The windows at the front of the house...........................to be repaired. (to need)
3. His friends, as well as his sister, ...about to leave. (to be)
4. The meadow, filled with flowers, ...a beautiful sight. (to be)
5. The children in the class ....eager to learn. (to be)
6. The kettle, in contrast to the saucepans,.........pitch black. (to be)
7. The books, although purchased only last year, already............ worn. (to look)
8. The leader of the musicians .... responsible for the arrangements. (to be)
9. The table, together with the chairs, ...quite old. (to be)
10. The members of the club ....attending the meetings. (to enjoy)

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. The letter, [as well as the postcards,] is on the table.
2. The windows [at the front of the house] need to be repaired.
3. His friends, [as well as his sister,] are about to leave.
4. The meadow, [filled with flowers,] is a beautiful sight.
5. The children [in the class] are eager to learn.
6. The kettle, [in contrast to the saucepans] is pitch black.
7. The books, [although purchased only last year] already look worn.
8. The leader [of the musicians] is responsible for the arrangements.
9. The table, [together with the chairs,] is quite old.
10. The members [of the club] enjoy attending the meetings .

(18) Personal pronouns

Exercises for chapter (18)

1. In the sentences below, fill in the blanks with the personal pronouns which agree with the underlined antecedents. For example:

The man walked slowly, because ....was carrying a heavy parcel.

The man walked slowly, because he was carrying a heavy parcel.

Although............knew it was dangerous, the girl wanted to ride the horse.

Although she knew it was dangerous, the girl wanted to ride the horse.

The tree is very tall, but ....does not give much shade.

The tree is very tall, but it does not give much shade.

She and I are not coming, because ....are too busy.

She and I are not coming, because we are too busy.

Doughnuts taste best when ....are fresh.

Doughnuts taste best when they are fresh.

1. The children are happy because .... have a holiday today.
2. My father and I had planned to visit the park, but since it was raining .... decided not to go.
3. This chair is valuable because .... is so old.
4. The woman is pleased because .... has found work.
5. Until .... retired, their father managed a business.
6. After the apples have been cut up,............should be sprinkled with cinnamon.
7. Because her husband used to study music, ... knows how to play several musical instruments.
8. My neighbor and I like to go shopping together, so that .... can help each other choose what to buy.
9. Her daughter likes to study, because…………….....finds the work interesting.
10. The car is in good condition, but...........................needs a new muffler.

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. they
2. we
3. it

4. she
5. he
6. they
7. he
8. we
9. she
10. it

2. Paying attention to the meanings of the sentences below, fill in each blank with he, she, it, we or they, and underline the antecedent of the pronoun. For example:

My grandfather does not want to retire, because ....likes his work.

My grandfather does not want to retire, because he likes his work.

His wife will be there if ....can find a baby-sitter.

His wife will be there if she can find a baby-sitter.

The bicycle must be repaired before ....can be ridden again.

The bicycle must be repaired before it can be ridden again.

My cousin and I live in different towns, but........................write to each other often.

My cousin and I live in different towns, but we write to each other often.

The bananas are quite soft, but ....can be used in banana cake.

The bananas are quite soft, but they can be used in banana cake.

1. When the moon is full, ... rises just as the sun sets.
2. Tracy and I like spending time together, because .... share many interests.
3. When my uncle was young,.................. enjoyed playing soccer.
4. The students worked hard, because .... were anxious to complete the assignment.
5. When the lady entered the hotel,……………....asked to speak with the manager.
6. The man was surprised when .... heard the news.
7. My friend and I had to leave early so that………………......could catch the bus.
8. I liked the picture so much that I had .... framed.
9. Your grandmother is old, but .... is still beautiful.
10. The boats look picturesque when.........................are tied up in the harbor.

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. it
2. we
3. he
4. they
5. she
6. he
7. we
8. it
9. she
10. they

3. The underlined pronouns in the following sentences are ambiguous, since it is not obvious to which antecedents they refer. For each sentence, first underline the two possible antecedents of the pronoun. Then make the sentence unambiguous by choosing one of the antecedents and repeating it, instead of using the pronoun. When repeating the antecedent, it is also necessary to repeat any words which modify it. For example:

I invited the woman and her sister, but she could not come.

I invited the woman and her sister, but her sister could not come.

or I invited the woman and her sister, but the woman could not come.

George gave Tom a book. Then he went home.

George gave Tom a book. Then Tom went home.

or George gave Tom a book. Then George went home.

The boys challenged the girls to a game, but they did not play well.

The boys challenged the girls to a game, but the boys did not play well.

or The boys challenged the girls to a game, but the girls did not play well.

1. I used your pen to finish the assignment, but then I lost it.
2. My father told my uncle the story, but he did not believe it.
3. When the students met the teachers for the first time, they were not sure what to expect.
4. The girl was dressed like her mother, except that she was not wearing a hat.
5. The man had arranged to meet his son at four o'clock, but he was late.
6. The box was the same size as the trunk, but it was much heavier.

7. The lady wanted to visit my aunt, but she had to leave town unexpectedly.
8. The riders slowed down their horses because they were growing tired.
9. The butterfly was sitting close to the flower, but it could not be seen in the photograph.
10. The cups were supposed to match the saucers, but they were a lighter shade of blue.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. your pen or the assignment
2. my father or my uncle
3. the students or the teachers
4. the girl or her mother
5. the man or his son
6. the box or the trunk
7. the lady or my aunt
8. the riders or their horses
9. the butterfly or the flower
10. the cups or the saucers.

4. Rewrite each of the following sentences, using the construction with the pronoun it, followed by the verb, followed by an infinitive. For example:

Traveling by ship was quite relaxing.

It was quite relaxing to travel by ship.

Finding the right path could take a long time.

It could take a long time to find the right path.

1. Paying close attention can be crucial.
2. Crossing the mountains would be very difficult.
3. Learning everything was not easy.
4. Skiing down the mountain was exciting.
5. Walking on a glacier can be dangerous.
6. Visiting Rome was a wonderful experience.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. It can be crucial to pay close attention.
2. It would be very difficult to cross the mountains.
3. It was not easy to learn everything.

4. It was exciting to ski down the mountain.
5. It can be dangerous to walk on a glacier.
6. It was a wonderful experience to visit Rome.

5. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the personal pronoun which agrees with the underlined word. The objective case must be used, since the pronouns in these sentences are the objects of verbs. For example:

I am looking for the post office. Can you help ....?

I am looking for the post office. Can you help me?

Since you are new here, I will show ....the way.

Since you are new here, I will show you the way.

If my father is at home, I will ask ....what to do.

If my father is at home, I will ask him what to do.

My aunt and uncle invited me to visit ....

My aunt and uncle invited me to visit them.

1. Because she is your friend, I offered to help....................
2. I wish someone would tell .... the answer.
3. They look familiar. I am sure we have met .... before.
4. If you are ready, we will drive .... home.
5. We would like you to call....................
6. He is our neighbor. We have known .... for years.
7. This is the book I need. May I borrow ....?
8. If you like, I will call .... when we arrive.
9. We were surprised they remembered....................
10. That man waved to us, but I do not recognize....................
11. I think they expect .... to come.
12. The piano is out of tune, but I am having.....tuned tomorrow.
13. Will she mind if I ask .... a question?
14. The beans will grow faster if you water....................

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. her
2. me
3. them
4. you
5. us
6. him

7. it
8. you
9. us
10. him
11. me
12. it
13. her
14. them

6. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the personal pronoun which agrees with the underlined word. Use the subjective case if the pronoun is the subject of a verb, and use the objective case if the pronoun is the object of a verb. For example:

They invited me to come, but ....did not have time.

They invited me to come, but I did not have time.

Just after we had mailed you the letter, ...called us.

Just after we had mailed you the letter, you called us.

That boy is quite friendly. I like ....

That boy is quite friendly. I like him.

He offered to lend me two books, but I had read ....already.

He offered to lend me two books, but I had read them already.

1. I saw your brother after school. ....lent me his bicycle.
2. Would you like me to help ....?
3. My friend and I expect the woman to call....................
4. If I am ready in time, ... will meet you there.
5. This woman is one of our relatives,.........is my husband's cousin.
6. Her grandfather is a wise man. Everybody respects....................
7. The chimney is old. .... needs to be repaired.
8. My sister likes sports. We should invite .... to join us.
9. Those people are your new neighbors. Have you met....... yet?
10. She and I will call you if .... are late.
11. I waited for you for twenty minutes, but ....did not come.
12. The camera was heavy, but he carried……….........everywhere he went.
13. Some ducks swim underwater when ....are searching for food.
14. I waved to you. Did you see.................... ..?

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. He
2. you
3. us
4. I
5. She
6. him
7. It
8. her
9. them
10. we
11. you
12. it
13. they
14. me

7. Paying attention to the case of the personal pronouns, rewrite each of the following sentences so that the meaning is reversed. For example:

We gave them the pen.

They gave us the pen.

I like you.

You like me.

1. She helped us.
2. He asked them to come.
3. I recognized her.
4. You warned me.
5. We reminded them to call.
6. They told him the truth.
7. he invited us for tea.
8. He offered me a sandwich.

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. We helped her.
2. They asked him to come.
3. She recognized me.
4. I warned you.
5. They reminded us to call.

6. He told them the truth.
7. We invited her for tea.
8. I offered him a sandwich.

8. Fill in each blank with either the subjective case or the objective case of the pronoun given in brackets. Use the subjective case if the pronoun follows the verb to be. Otherwise, use the objective case. For example:

That is .... (he)

That is he.

We remember .... (he)

We remember him.

It was ....who did it. (we)

It was we who did it.

He threw ....the ball. (we)

He threw us the ball.

1. It was .... (I)
2. Please hand .... the book. (I)
3. I told .... the secret. (she)
4. It was .... who was here. (she)
5. It was .... who knew the answer. (they)
6. Let .... go. (they)
7. his is .... (he).
8. I knew .... before. (he)
9. Those were .... (they)
10. It is .... who will be there. (we)

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. I 2. me 3. her 4. she 5. they 6. them 7. he 8. him 9. they 10. we

9. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the personal pronoun which agrees with the underlined word. The objective case must be used, since the pronouns in these sentences are the objects of prepositions. For example:

I want you to address the letter to ....

I want you to address the letter to me.

This jar is the largest. Rice was stored in ....

This jar is the largest. Rice was stored in it.

The girl was shy, but we had an enjoyable conversation with ....

The girl was shy, but we had an enjoyable conversation with her.

We went to the post office, but there was no mail for ....

We went to the post office, but there was no mail for us.

1. They want us to go with ....
2. I would like you to wrap this gift for....................
3. She thinks we are talking about....................
4. The wall was so high that I could not see over....................
5. Your nephew wants us to write to....................
6. You should ask them to send it to....................
7. Nancy and I would like you to come with....................
8. He asked us to wait for....................
9. I would be grateful if you would explain this to....................
10. Because you were late, we saved some food for....................
11. We told you that the costumes were designed by....................
12. The swans were so beautiful that we wrote a song about ....
13. The car is worth more than you paid for....................
14. Your daughter wants me to read to....................

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. them 2. me 3. her 4. it 5. him 6. you 7. us 8. him 9. me 10. you 11. us 12. them 13. it 14. her

10. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the personal pronoun which agrees with the underlined word. Use the subjective case if the pronoun is the subject of a verb, and use the objective case if the pronoun is the object of a verb or the object of a preposition. For example:

They looked at me, but .... did not recognize them.

They looked at me, but I did not recognize them.

We told you what would happen, but ..... did not listen.

We told you what would happen, but you did not listen.

We saw them, but they did not see.....

We saw them, but they did not see us.

They asked us a question, but we could not tell .... the answer.

They asked us a question, but we could not tell them the answer.

Their son did not know the way, but we pointed it out to......

Their son did not know the way, but we pointed it out to him.

The girl is so mischievous, we do not know what to do with......

The girl is so mischievous, we do not know what to do with her.

1. His father works hard. .... is a doctor.
2. Because the woman seemed friendly, we asked........................for directions.
3. The cupboards are so full, we cannot put anything else into......
4. You will be surprised if we beat .... in the race.
5. Have you been looking for me? .... had to run an errand.
6. My niece wants us to send the photographs to....................
7. We have invited them to visit....................
8. The store was open, but we did not have time to go into.............
9. She will be angry if we make fun of....................
10. You and I are good friends, ... hardly ever argue.
11. Your son-in-law asked us to describe it to....................
12. The windows are very stiff. We open...........only in the summer.
13. The basket is heavy. .... is full of oranges.
14. Your husband does not like anyone to contradict....................
15. I hope you were not anxious about....................
16. Would you like me to mail the information to ....
17. The leaves rustled in the breeze, ... were already starting to change color.
18. The road was long, but we followed .... to the end.
19. I asked him to tell .... the time.
20. You will enjoy yourself if .... come to the concert.
21. We want you to wait for....................

Answers to Exercise 10:

1. He 2. her 3. them 4. you 5. I 6. her 7. us 8. it 9. her 10. We 11.him 12. them 13. It 14. him 15. me 16. you 17. They 18. it 19. me 20. you 21. us

11. Fill in each blank with the possessive adjective which agrees with the underlined antecedent. For example:

I am looking for ....keys.

I am looking for my keys.

The lady left ....gloves on the counter.

The lady left her gloves on the counter.

Personal pronouns must agree with ....antecedents.

Personal <u>pronouns</u> must agree with <u>their</u> antecedents.

1. I opened .... book.
2. Did the <u>man</u> finish .... work?
3. he <u>bear</u> is licking .... paws.
4. Please show <u>us</u> to .... seats.
5. <u>She</u> has already purchased .... ticket.
6. Have <u>you</u> heard from .... friends recently?
7. The <u>students</u> live near .... school.
8. The <u>gentleman</u> would like to have .... watch repaired.
9. <u>We</u> eat .... breakfast at the same time every morning.
10. That <u>woman</u> always walks .... dog in the park.
11. <u>I</u> would like to renew .... subscription.
12. The <u>eagle</u> was holding something in .... claws.
13. Will <u>you</u> give me .... address?
14. The <u>gymnasts</u> asked .... coach for advice.

Answers to Exercise 11:

1.my 2. his 3. its 4. our 5. her 6. your 7. their 8. his 9. our 10. her 11. my 12. its 13. your 14. their

12. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the possessive adjective which agrees with the noun or pronoun shown in brackets. For example:

........barking kept us awake. (the dog)

<u>Its</u> barking kept us awake.

........arriving on time was fortunate. (we)

<u>Our</u> arriving on time was fortunate.

........swooping and darting was a sign that it would rain. (the swallows)

Their swooping and darting was a sign that it would rain.

1. .... following the guidelines was a good idea. (you)
2. ....agreeing to forward the mail was helpful. (the students)
3. .... answering the questions so easily was unexpected. (he)
4. .... driving the car saved a great deal of time. (I)
5. ....speaking so forcefully impressed the audience. (the woman)
6. ....entering the race was intended as a gesture of goodwill. (we)

7. .... chiming told us the time. (the clock)

Answers to Exercise 12:

1.Your 2. Their 3. His 4. My 5. Her 6. Our 7. Its

13. Fill in each blank with the possessive pronoun which agrees with the underlined antecedent. For example:

If you cannot find your pen, I will lend you........

If you cannot find your pen, I will lend you mine.

I failed my exams, but my brother passed......

I failed my exams, but my brother passed his.

Their umbrellas are rather tattered, but we have mended........

Their umbrellas are rather tattered, but we have mended ours.

1. Your coat may be warm, but I think................ is more elegant.
2. Because I had no gloves, my niece offered me.......................
3. I forgot to bring my camera. Did you bring.......................
4. When I lost my map, your son lent me......................
5. They discarded their old telephone directories, but we kept.....
6. We have not planted our peas yet, but the farmers have planted .... already.
7. I never cut my hair, but my sister cuts .... once a month.
8. The neighbors' children are very independent, but we have to help.............................
9. We store our bicycles in the shed, but they leave........... outside.
10. I water my plants every day, but you never water.........................
11. Although she likes her school, I prefer......................
12. My niece studies for all her tests, but my nephew refuses to study for.....................

Answers to Exercise 13:

1.mine 2. hers 3. yours 4. his 5. ours 6. theirs 7. hers 8. ours 9. theirs 10. yours 11. mine 12. his

14. Fill in each blank with either the possessive adjective or the possessive pronoun which agrees with the underlined antecedent. Remember that the possessive adjective must precede a noun or gerund, whereas the possessive pronoun is used independently. For example:

Last night I wrote to .... sister.

Last night I wrote to my sister.

I thought the book was yours, but in fact, it was........

I thought the book was yours, but in fact, it was mine.

She has ordered ..... tickets in advance.

She has ordered her tickets in advance.

Although they do not know it yet, the prize is....................

Although they do not know it yet, the prize is theirs.

The rain continued ..... pattering on the roof.

The rain continued its pattering on the roof.

1. I always enjoy .... vacation.
2. I mailed my letter. Did you mail............................... ..?
3. He is eager to try out .... skis.
4. I am sure .... handling of the situation was correct.
5. I rarely use a car, but they drive .... everywhere.
6. My aunt visits .... cousins once a year.
7. We are proud of .... record.
8. I have never met your children. Have you met.................... ..?
9. The gate swung noiselessly on .... hinges.
10. I have received my diploma, but she has not yet received...........
11. Have you filled out .... application?
12. The bird continued .... twittering long after dusk.
13. They are going to sublet .... apartment.
14. I got my driver's license last month, but he got .... a year ago.
15. Most businesses try to expand, but we have kept.............. small.
16. They saw .... friend on television.
17. I finished my assignment yesterday. Have you finished.......... ..?

Answers to Exercise 14:

1.my 2. yours 3. his 4. my 5. theirs 6. her 7. our 8. mine 9. its 10.hers 11. your 12. its 13. their 14. his 15. ours 16. their 17. yours

15. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the reflexive pronoun which agrees with the underlined word. For example:

I found .... in a difficult situation.

I found myself in a difficult situation.

The children warmed .... in front of the fire.

The children warmed themselves in front of the fire.

1. He should take better care of...
2. You may help.......................................
3. I saw it...
4. She likes to involve .... in community affairs.
5. We could see .... reflected in the mirror.
6. The bird perched .... on the window sill.
7. The students found the solution..
8. You .... must decide what to do.
9. The teenagers amused...................by telephoning their friends.
10. We .... were surprised at the news.
11. He likes to hear .... talk.
12. She prides .... on her ability to speak French.
13. I told .... not to lose hope.
14. The fox hid .... under a bush.

Answers to Exercise 15:

1. himself
2. yourself or yourselves
3. myself
4. herself
5. ourselves
6. itself
7. themselves
8. yourself or yourselves
9. themselves
10. ourselves
11. himself
12. herself
13. myself
14. itself

(19) Other pronouns

Exercises for chapter (19)

☺ Note ... The answers will be given at the end of all coming exercises for chapters 19 - 28

1. For each of the following general statements, change all of the pronouns and possessive adjectives to agree with the pronoun given in brackets. For example:

We must work to keep our environment healthy. (you)

You must work to keep your environment healthy.

You should always pay your income tax before the deadline. (one)

One should always pay one's income tax before the deadline.

One should not think only of oneself. (we)

We should not think only of ourselves.

1. We should work in order to realize our ambitions. (one)
2. When you are overworked, you should try to give yourself time to relax. (we)
3. One can never be sure whether one's intuitions are correct. (you)
4. If one organizes one's time properly, one can accomplish a great deal. (we)
5. If you own property, you should protect yourself with a good insurance policy. (one)
6. We should never be afraid to state our views. (you)
7. One should try to educate oneself as well as possible. (you)
8. We should try to teach our children a sense of responsibility. (one)
9. One can choose one's friends, but one cannot choose one's relatives. (we)
10. We become mature when we learn to trust our own judgement. (you)
11. You learn from your mistakes. (we)
12. You should always treat your friends well. (one)

2. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with this or these. Use this to refer to a single person or thing, and use these to refer to more than one person or thing. For example:

.......is her bicycle. This is her bicycle.

Is .... jacket too large? Is this jacket too large?

........are our books. These are our books.

........boots are warm. These boots are warm.

1. Does .... bus go downtown?
2. .... are their suitcases.
3. .... is his camera .
4. .... trees are over one hundred years old.
5. Is .... flower a daffodil?
6. .... women will perform the skit.
7. .... is the main entrance.
8. .... lakes are very deep.
9. .... is their school.
10. Are .... radishes?

3. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with that or those. Use that to refer to a single person or thing, and use those to refer to more than one person or thing. For example:

.......is a hovercraft. That is a hovercraft.

.... plane flies to Geneva. That plane flies to Geneva.

........are peacocks. Those are peacocks.

Are ....children on vacation? Are those children on vacation?

1. .... is his pen.
2. .... girls are Australian.
3. Has .... chair been painted?
4. .... watches are not expensive.
5. Does .... train usually arrive on time?
6. Was .... your friend?
7. .... are my cousins.
8. .... is a swan.
9. Do .... notebooks belong to you?
10. .... are the places we will visit.

4. Rewrite the following sentences, changing the subjects and verbs from the singular to the plural. For example:

Is this ready? Are these ready?

This towel is fluffy. These towels are fluffy.

That measures the temperature.

Those measure the temperature.

That pail is made of aluminum.

Those pails are made of aluminum.

1. This was finished last week.
2. Is that radiator working?
3. This picture is ours.
4. That has been completed.
5. This was designed by his aunt.
6. That does not need to be altered.
7. This table is made of wood.
8. as that student seen the play?
9. This umbrella is new.
10. That river flows through the mountains.

5. Rewrite the following sentences, changing the subjects and verbs from the plural to the singular. For example:

These were on sale. — This was on sale.

Are these books interesting? — Is this book interesting?

Those have been useful. — That has been useful.

Those plays were popular. — That play was popular.

1. These were necessary.
2. Those colors are beautiful.
3. Are these bells too loud?
4. Have those been polished?
5. These shirts are clean.
6. hose windows are on the west side of the house.
7. Are these correct?
8. These boys like to play soccer.
9. Those are sufficient.
10. Those curtains are crimson.

6. Paying attention to correct word order, arrange each of the following sets of words to form questions beginning with interrogative pronouns which are the objects of the verbs. If necessary, add the auxiliary <u>do</u>, <u>does</u> or <u>did</u>. For example:

you, prefer, which — Which do you prefer?

they, heard, what — What did they hear?

we, have found, what — What have we found?

I, should choose, which   Which should I choose?

1. they, have decided, what
2. you, want, which
3. I, should wear, what
4. she, said, what
5. he, likes, what
6. you, are reading, what
7. one, can do, what
8. they, bought, which
9. he, will be studying, what
10. I, saw, which
11. she, expects, what
12. they, had discovered, what
13. it, costs, what
14. you, would have done, what
15. he, will submit, which
16. she, received, what

7. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the interrogative pronoun who or whom. Use who if the pronoun is the subject of the verb, and use whom if the pronoun is the object of the verb or the object of a preposition. For example:

.....is there?

Who is there?

..... has been notified?

Who has been notified?

.... are we expecting?

Whom are we expecting?

For .... did you buy the flowers?

For whom did you buy the flowers?

1. .... has read the book?
2. To .... did he give the letter?
3. .... is at the door?
4. .... was awarded the prize?
5. .... did he tell?
6. .... answered the question correctly?
7. .... does she like the best?

8. .... would be the most suitable person for the job?
9. For .... are they waiting?
10. .... has been informed of the situation?
11. .... can we ask?
12. .... will be ready by eight o'clock?
13. .... is watering the flowers?
14. .... did you photograph?
15. .... attended the meeting?
16. .... was at the party?
17. .... could be heard most easily?
18. .... do you believe?
19. To .... did you sell your car?
20. .... will be waiting for us?

8. Paying attention to grammatically correct usage, for each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with <u>who</u>, <u>whom</u> or <u>whose</u>. In these sentences, use <u>whose</u> only as a possessive adjective, preceding a noun. For example:

..............is raking the leaves?

<u>Who</u> is raking the leaves?

.............did you call?

<u>Whom</u> did you call?

To .... was he speaking?

To <u>whom</u> was he speaking?

............bicycle is leaning against the steps?

Whose bicycle is leaning against the steps?

1. By .... was this written?
2. .... gloves are lying on the table?
3. .... lives here?
4. .... did they help?
5. .... child is this?
6. .... was allowed to enter the competition?
7. .... handwriting is the most legible?
8. With .... was she speaking?
9. .... sang the song?
10. .... does she know?
11. .... shoes are these?
12. .... will make the cake?

13. .... was present?
14. .... curiosity would not be aroused by such a tale?
15. .... will he teach?

9. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with either what or which. For example:

...........is happening?

What is happening?

...........of my coats do you like the best?

Which of my coats do you like the best?

............a surprise!

What a surprise!

1. .... time does the train leave?
2. .... of the three schools do you attend?
3. .... is your name?
4. .... a wonderful idea!
5. .... planet is larger, Jupiter or Saturn?
6. .... of your children is the cleverest?
7. .... a mess!
8. .... is your favorite dessert?
9. .... would you prefer, tea or coffee?
10. .... of these bicycles is yours?

10. Using the introductory phrase Please tell me, rewrite the following direct questions as indirect questions. Make sure that the subjects precede the verbs in the indirect questions. For example:

Who will choose the winners?

Please tell me who will choose the winners.

Whom did they choose?

Please tell me whom they chose.

For whom had you bought the present?

Please tell me for whom you had bought the present.

1. Who was selected?
2. Whom have you consulted?
3. To whom will she address the letter?
4. What did you accomplish?
5. Which boy opened the door?
6. To which cities has he traveled?

7. Which music did the orchestra perform?
8. For whose sake has he come?
9. What caused the delay?
10. Whose house did they visit?
11. Whose dog chased the cat?
12. Which books have you read?

11. Using the introductory phrase We will ask, and paying attention to the correct word order, rewrite the following direct questions as indirect questions. For example:

Who is that?

We will ask who that is.

What was that noise?

We will ask what that noise was.

Who is here?

We will ask who is here.

1. What is this?
2. Who was there?
3. Who was first?
4. Which was it?
5. Which is ready?
6. Who is she?
7. Whose book is this?
8. hose work is ready?
9. Who was right?
10. Who was that singer?
11. Which students are here?
12. Who were they?

12. Paying attention to correct word order, use the phrases given in brackets to rewrite the following direct questions as indirect questions. For example:

Who baked the cake? (They will ask)

They will ask who baked the cake.

Whom did you tell? (We want to know)

We want to know whom you told.

To which student had she given the prize? (Did you find out)

Did you find out to which student she had given the prize?

Who was that? (Please tell me)

Please tell me who that was.

1. Who are you? (I want to know)
2. Who swept the floor? (We will ask)
3. For whom did you organize the party? (Tell me)
4. Whom had they met? (I asked)
5. At what time will you reach the station? (I need to know)
6. Which horse won the race? (They will ask)
7. Whose answer is correct? (I wonder)
8. Which hill did they climb? (We will ask)
9. What do you mean? (Please tell us)
10. What made that noise? (I wonder)
11. Which students are ready? (Will you tell me)
12. For what purpose has he called the meeting? (Ask him)
13. Whom can we trust? (I am not sure)
14. Whose work was chosen? (They will ask)
15. Which book has she ordered? (We will find out)
16. Who am I? (Do you know)

13. For each of the following sentences, underline the relative clause, and indicate whether the clause is defining or non-defining. For example:

The sky, which was perfectly clear, was covered with stars.

The sky, <u>which was perfectly clear</u>, was covered with stars. (Non-defining)

The shoes which are by the bed are mine.

The shoes <u>which are by the bed</u> are mine. [Defining[

1. The new appliances, which are quite expensive, will be on sale next week.
2. The picture which is hanging on the wall was painted by our friend.
3. The people who own the hotel have a great deal of business experience.
4. His uncle, who sings in the choir, is a friend of my father.
5. The building, which is in excellent repair, is over two hundred years old.
6. The door that is open leads to the study.
7. My friend, who is coming for a visit, is anxious to meet you.
8. Did you see the exhibition which was held here last week?

14. Paying attention to grammatically correct usage, for each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with who, whom or whose. For example:

The person ..... owns the bookstore is my friend.

The person who owns the bookstore is my friend.

The singer to .....we gave the bouquet will be performing again tonight.

The singer to whom we gave the bouquet will be performing again tonight.

The contestants ..... names were announced should prepare to start.

The contestants whose names were announced should prepare to start.

1. My best friend, ... I see every day, always has something new to tell me.
2. Most students....................live in residence find it easy to make friends.
3. Our neighbors, to .... we lent our lawnmower, are conscientious and considerate.
4. The volunteers, ... enthusiasm was obvious, finished the work quickly.
5. The musicians .... we heard yesterday have played together for many years.
6. Parents .... children do well in school usually consider themselves fortunate.
7. Children .... like music are often good at mathematics.
8. The student to …………………....the prize was awarded had an impressive record.
9. My friend, ...I visited last week, is taking a holiday soon.
10. The class treasurer, to .... we gave the money, announced the balance of the account.
11. The engineers .....designed the building received an award.
12. The townspeople, ... pride in their community is well-known, raised enough money to build a new town hail.

15. Paying attention to grammatically correct usage, for each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with who, whom or which. Use who or

whom for antecedents which refer to persons, and use which for antecedents which refer to things. For example:

The woman ....borrowed the books is a librarian.

The woman who borrowed the books is a librarian.

The key ....opens this door is difficult to turn.

The key which opens this door is difficult to turn.

The children ....we met are well-behaved.

The children whom we met are well-behaved.

The story ....you heard is true.

The story which you heard is true.

The man to ....you told the news is my brother.

The man to whom you told the news is my brother.

I have not yet received the letter to ....you refer.

I have not yet received the letter to which you refer.

1. The window .... is open is the kitchen window.
2. The girl .... recited the poem is my niece.
3. The woman to ....we were introduced was quite helpful.
4. The opportunity to.........................she owed her success came unexpectedly.
5. The man .... they trusted was unreliable.
6. The book .... you read is the best book by that author.
7. The Pacific Ocean, ... may have been crossed by raft during the Stone Age, is the world's largest ocean.
8. His mother,..............he visited frequently, ran her own business.
9. The boy, ...was friendly and intelligent, soon found work.
10. Her husband, to ....she told the story, was just as surprised as I was.
11. The pictures,...............were taken in Algeria, were very striking.
12. The newspaper to...............we subscribe is delivered regularly.

…………………………………………………………………………………

Answers to exercises 1-15 chapter 19

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. One should work in order to realize one's ambitions.
2. When we are overworked we should try to give ourselves time to relax.

3. You can never be sure whether your intuitions are correct.
4. If we organize our time properly, we can accomplish a great deal.
5. If one owns property, one should protect oneself with a good insurance policy.
6. You should never be afraid to state your views.
7. You should try to educate yourself as well as possible.
8. One should try to teach one's children a sense of responsibility.
9. We can choose our friends, but we cannot choose our relatives.
10. You become mature when you learn to trust your own judgment.
11. We learn from our mistakes.
12. One should always treat one's friends well.

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. his
2. These
3. This
4. These
5. this
6. These
7. This
8. These
9. This
10. these

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. That
2. Those
3. that
4. Those
5. that
6. that
7. Those
8. That
9. those
10. Those

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. These were finished last week.
2. Are those radiators working?
3. These pictures are ours.
4. Those have been completed.
5. These were designed by his aunt.
6. Those do not need to be altered.
7. These tables are made of wood.
8. Have those students seen the play?
9. These umbrellas are new.
10. Those rivers flow through the mountains.

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. This was necessary.
2. That color is beautiful.
3. Is this bell too loud?
4. Has that been polished?
5. This shirt is clean.
6. That window is on the west side of the house.
7. Is this correct?
8. This boy likes to play soccer.
9. That is sufficient.
10. That curtain is crimson.

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. What have they decided?
2. Which do you want?
3. What should I wear?
4. What did she say?
5. What does he like?
6. What are you reading?
7. What can one do?
8. Which did they buy?
9. What will he be studying?
10. Which did I see?
11. What does she expect?
12. What had they discovered?
13. What does it cost?

14. What would you have done?
15. Which will he submit?
16. What did she receive?

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. ho
2. whom
3. Who
4. Who
5. Whom
6. Who
7. Whom
8. Who
9. whom
10. Who
11. Whom
12. Who
13. Who
14. Whom
15. Who
16. Who
17. Who
18. Whom
19. whom
20. Who

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. whom
2. Whose
3. Who
4. Whom
5. Whose
6. Who
7. Whose
8. whom
9. Who
10. Whom

11. Whose
12. Who
13. Who
14. Whose
15. Whom

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. What
2. Which
3. What
4. What
5. Which
6. Which
7. What
8. What
9. Which
10. Which

Answers to Exercise 10:

1. Please tell me who was selected.
2. Please tell me whom you have consulted.
3. Please tell me to whom she will address the letter.
4. Please tell me what you accomplished.
5. Please tell me which boy opened the door.
6. Please tell me to which cities he has traveled.
7. Please tell me which music the orchestra performed.
8. Please tell me for whose sake he has come.
9. Please tell me what caused the delay.
10. Please tell me whose house they visited.
11. Please tell me whose dog chased the cat.
12. Please tell me which books you have read.

Answers to Exercise 11:

1. We will ask what this is.
2. We will ask who was there.
3. We will ask who was first.
4. We will ask which it was.
5. We will ask which is ready.

6. We will ask who she is.
7. We will ask whose book this is.
8. We will ask whose work is ready.
9. We will ask who was right.
10. We will ask who that singer was.
11. We will ask which students are here.
12. We will ask who they were.

Answers to Exercise 12:

1. I want to know who you are.
2. We will ask who swept the floor.
3. Tell me for whom you organized the party.
4. I asked whom they had met.
5. I need to know at what time you will reach the station.
6. They will ask which horse won the race.
7. I wonder whose answer is correct.
8. We will ask which hill they climbed.
9. Please tell us what you mean.
10. I wonder what made that noise.
11. Will you tell me which students are ready?
12. Ask him for what purpose he has called the meeting.
13. I am not sure whom we can trust.
14. They will ask whose work was chosen.
15. We will find out which book she has ordered.
16. Do you know who I am?

Answers to Exercise 13:

1. The new appliances, <u>which are quite expensive</u>, will be on sale next week. [Non-defining]
2. The picture <u>which is hanging on the wall</u> was painted by our friend. [Defining]
3. The people <u>who own the hotel</u> have a great deal of business experience. [Defining]
4. His uncle, <u>who sings in the choir</u>, is a friend of my father. [Non-defining]
5. The building, <u>which is in excellent repair</u>, is over two hundred years old. [Non-defining]

6. The door <u>that is open</u> leads to the study. [Defining]
7. My friend, <u>who is coming for a visit,</u> is anxious to meet you. [Non-defining]
8. Did you see the exhibition <u>which was held here last week</u>? [Defining[

Answers to Exercise 14:

1. whom
2. who
3. whom
4. whose
5. whom
6. whose
7. who
8. whom
9. whom
10. whom
11. who
12. whose

Answers to Exercise 15:

1. which
2. who
3. whom
4. which
5. whom
6. which
7. which
8. whom
9. who
10. whom
11. which
12. which

(20) Determiners

Exercises for chapter (20)

1. Paying attention to whether reference is being made to a group of two objects, or a group of more than two objects, for each of the following sentences fill in the blank with the correct word chosen from the pair given in brackets. For example:

There are two trees on the lawn. ....of them are spruce trees. (All, Both)

There are two trees on the lawn. Both of them are spruce trees.

I had three pencils. Have you seen ..... of them? (any, either)

I had three pencils. Have you seen any of them? (any, either)

There are four bushes in the garden, but.......of them are rhododendrons. (neither, none)

There are four bushes in the garden, but none of them are rhododendrons.

1. I have three winter coats, but ………………...of them are new. (neither, none)
2. There are two umbrellas here, but .... of them is mine. (neither, none)
3. He owns twelve cows. ....of them are Jerseys. (All, Both)
4. She has painted dozens of pictures. Have you seen .... of them? (any, either)
5. Amy and Beth are twins. They.....play the guitar. (all, both)
6. Two people said "Hello" to me, but I did not recognize .... of them. (any, either)
7. My wife and I .... enjoy classical music. (all, both)
8. I found all of the questions difficult. Did you answer .... of them correctly? (any, either)
9. I asked six different people, but .... of them knew where Walnut Street was. (neither, none)
10. My friends and I would like to thank you for your hospitality. We .... enjoyed ourselves very much. (all, both)
11. There are two public libraries in the city, but .... of them is located close to where I live. (neither, none)
12. Two wrist watches were left here. Is .... of them yours? (any, either)

13. He has three nephews. .... of them have graduated from university. (All, Both)

14. I have two violins. You are welcome to use .... of them. (any, either)

15. My aunt and uncle are .... coming for a visit. (all, both)

16. George and Tom like playing chess together, but .... of them likes to lose a game. (neither, none)

17. The bush is covered with blueberries. Are .... of them ripe yet? (any, either)

18. I have read five books on the subject, but .... of them were very helpful. (neither, none)

2.Paying attention to whether the singular or the plural form is correct, fill in the blanks with the correct words chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

Several of my friends ....present. (was, were)

Several of my friends <u>were</u> present.

One of his friends ....absent. (was, were)

One of his friends <u>was</u> absent.

Each of the dogs pricked up ....ears. (its, their)

Each of the dogs pricked up <u>its</u> ears.

All of the dogs pricked up ....ears. (its, their)

All of the dogs pricked up <u>their</u> ears.

1. Each of her friends .... a university degree. (has, have)

2. Many of the birds in this park .... here throughout the year. (live, lives)

3. Both of the children wanted to finish ....work early. (his, their)

4. Every writer should learn from ....own experiences. (his or her, their)

5. Either of my daughters can lend you ....skis. (her, their)

6. Few of her ideas .... as intriguing as this one. (are, is)

7. All of the visitors expressed ....thanks. (his or her, their)

8. Each of our customers .... important. (are, is)

9. One of the canaries ate only half .... food. (its, their)

10. Either of the routes .... a good choice. (are, is)

11. Neither of the boys forgot .... books. (his, their)

12. Both of the drawings .... beautiful. (are, is)

13. Neither of my uncles .... to us often. (write, writes)
14. Every girl clapped .... hands. (her, their)

3. Paying attention to whether an adjective, pronoun or adverb is required, complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with no, none or not, as appropriate. For example:

There is ....danger.

There is no danger.

........of the trees are evergreens.

None of the trees are evergreens.

It was ....raining when I left home.

It was not raining when I left home.

1. There is .... wind this morning.
2. I have .... finished reading the book.
3. .... of the children were late for school.
4. We did .... tell anyone the secret.
5. I have .... idea what time it is.
6. .... of the streets have been plowed.
7. .... bicycles are allowed on the grass.
8. He is .... ready.
9. .... harm was done.
10. There is .... time to lose.
11. She is .... expected to arrive until tomorrow.
12. .... of the stores are open.

4. Rewrite the following sentences as negative statements, in which the word some is replaced by the word any. For example:

He has sold some apples.

He has not sold any apples.

I need to buy some shoes.

I do not need to buy any shoes.

1. I will make some salad.
2. We need some onions.
3. I have met some of your friends.
4. He has photographed some of the most beautiful parts of the city.
5. She wants to take some courses in Archaeology.
6. I recognized some of the students.
7. We have visited some of the offshore islands.

8. I have read some books by that author.
9. There is some danger involved.
10. I have some reservations about your plan.
11. They have interviewed some of the contestants.
12. She bought some of the books second-hand.

5. Rewrite each of the following sentences to express a negative meaning. Each sentence contains a word beginning with some. If the word beginning with some occurs at the beginning of the sentence, change the word beginning with some to the appropriate word or phrase beginning with no. For example:

Some of the coats are expensive.

None of the coats are expensive.

Someone is at home.

No one is at home.

*If the word beginning with some occurs later in the sentence, change the sentence to a negative statement, and change the word beginning with some to the appropriate word beginning with any. For example:

I have some paper.

I do not have any paper.

I saw your glasses somewhere.

I did not see your glasses anywhere.

1. He has some relatives in the city.
2. I know someone here.
3. Some of us were surprised by the announcement.
4. I plan to go somewhere on my vacation.
5. Some tickets were sold this morning.
6. I heard someone playing the bagpipes.
7. I gave her some advice.
8. Something is wrong.
9. We bought something at the flea market.
10. They had some exciting adventures.
11. Someone offered to help me.
12. She knows someone working at the Library.
13. He lives somewhere near here.
14. Somebody left early.
15. I saw someone arriving by taxi.

16. Some books are missing.
17. I have something to do this afternoon.
18. Some of the magazines are worth reading.

6. Paying attention to the grammatical structure, complete each of the following sentences by filling in the blank with another, other, others or else, as appropriate. For example:

Would you like .... cup of tea?

Would you like another cup of tea?

The ....guests have already arrived.

The other guests have already arrived.

Five of the books were returned on time, but three............were overdue.

Five of the books were returned on time, but three others were overdue.

Who ....was at the party?

Who else was at the party?

1. I want to borrow............................ book from the library.
2. Three people moved out, and two .... moved in.
3. Who .... knows the secret?
4. There are several .... possibilities.
5. Where .... should I look?
6. Some students enjoyed the film, but .... did not.
7. He lives on the .... side of the lake.
8. I have .... idea.
9. .... people soon followed her example.
10. Do you know anyone .... here?
11. We are going to move to .... city.
12. Some birds feed on insects, while .... eat berries.
13. Somebody .... should have a turn now.
14. Few .... people attended the ceremony.
15. You may borrow this eraser. I have several................... ....
16. What .... have you decided?

7. The following five sentences, labelled A to E, are identical except for the position of the word only:

A. My only friend drew the picture of the child yesterday.

B. My friend drew only the picture of the child yesterday.

C. My friend drew the only picture of the child yesterday.

D. My friend drew the picture of the only child yesterday.

E. My friend drew the picture of the child only yesterday.

The meanings of the preceding five sentences are given in the five sentences below. For each sentence, fill in the blank with the letter (A to E) which corresponds to the sentence above which has the same meaning.

1. …………..My friend drew the one existing picture of the child yesterday.
2. ....My friend drew nothing except the picture of the child yesterday.
3. ....My friend drew the picture of the child as short a time ago as yesterday.
4. ....The one friend that I have drew the picture of the child yesterday.
5. ....My friend drew the picture of the one child in the family yesterday.

8. Explain the differences in meaning of the sentences in the following pairs.

1. There is a little butter left.
2. There is little butter left.
3. We encountered a few difficulties.
4. We encountered few difficulties.

9. Paying attention to the grammatical structure, for each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with such, so or too, as appropriate. In some of the sentences, the word that has been omitted. For example:

I saw ....beautiful flowers, I wished I had brought my camera with me.

I saw such beautiful flowers, I wished I had brought my camera with me.

The sun was ....bright that we had to wear sunglasses.

The sun was so bright that we had to wear sunglasses.

I saw ....many flowers that I could not identify them all.

I saw so many flowers that I could not identify them all.

By the time I received your message, it was ....late to call you.

By the time I received your message, it was too late to call you.

1. She sang.........................soothing lullabies that the baby was soon asleep.
2. He owned.......................many books that his walls were lined with bookcases.
3. The boys were .... excited to sit still.

4. He has ......varied interests, one never knows what he will do next.
5. They have ....few enemies, they are accepted wherever they go.
6. The snow was .... deep for us to walk across the field.
7. Yesterday I walked ....far that I fell asleep immediately after supper.
8. I had ....a good time at the party, I did not want to leave.
9. I see her .... often that I feel I know her quite well.
10. The visibility was ....poor for the mountains to be seen.
11. This is...........an interesting book, I stayed up all night to read it.
12. This puzzle is .... easy that a child could do it.
13. There was .... much traffic, I could not cross the street.
14. She was .... tired to watch the video.
15. They have.........little furniture, it will be easy for them to move.

…………………………………………………………………………………..

Answers to exercises 1-9 chapter 20

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. none
2. neither
3. All
4. any
5. both
6. either
7. both
8. any
9. none
10. all
11. neither
12. either
13. All
14. either
15. both
16. neither
17. any
18. none

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. has
2. live
3. their
4. his or her
5. her
6. are
7. their
8. is
9. its
10. is
11. his
12. are
13. writes
14. her

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. no
2. not
3. None
4. not
5. no
6. None
7. No
8. not
9. No
10. no
11. not
12. None

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. I will not make any salad.
2. We do not need any onions.
3. I have not met any of your friends.
4. He has not photographed any of the most beautiful parts of the city.
5. She does not want to take any courses in Archaeology.

6. I did not recognize any of the students.
7. We have not visited any of the offshore islands.
8. I have not read any books by that author.
9. There is not any danger involved.
10. I do not have any reservations about your plan.
11. They have not interviewed any of the contestants.
12. She did not buy any of the books second-hand.

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. He does not have any relatives in the city.
2. I do not know anyone here.
3. None of us were surprised by the announcement.
4. I do not plan to go anywhere on my vacation.
5. No tickets were sold this morning.
6. I did not hear anyone playing the bagpipes.
7. I did not give her any advice.
8. Nothing is wrong.
9. We did not buy anything at the flea market.
10. They did not have any exciting adventures.
11. No one offered to help me.
12. She does not know anyone working at the Library.
13. He does not live anywhere near here.
14. Nobody left early.
15. I did not see anyone arriving by taxi.

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. another
2. others
3. else
4. other
5. else
6. others
7. other
8. another
9. Other
10. else
11. another

12. others
13. else
14. other
15. others
16. else

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. C
2. B
3. E
4. A
5. D

Answers to Exercise 8:
Meanings:

1. There is some butter left.
2. There is a very small amount of butter left.
3. We encountered some difficulties.
4. We encountered a very small number of difficulties.

(The phrase "few difficulties" implies that the difficulties were unimportant)

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. such
2. so
3. too
4. such
5. so
6. too
7. so
8. such
9. so
10. too
11. such
12. so
13. so
14. too
15. so

(21) Adjectives : Position in a sentence

Exercises for chapter (21)

1. Combine each of the following phrases with the adjective given in brackets by changing the adjective to a pronoun, and using the word <u>of</u>. For example:

an original recipe (our)

an original recipe <u>of ours</u>

these red scarves (either)

<u>either of</u> these red scarves

the old movies (no)

<u>none of</u> the old movies

1. that new bicycle (my)
2. the students (each)
3. those leather briefcases (neither)
4. these two books (your)
5. her latest inventions (some)
6. that second-hand typewriter (his)
7. their unusual experiences (another)
8. these rubber boots (no)
9. that velvet dress (her)
10. those black shoes (any)

2. Place the adjectives given in brackets before the accompanying nouns, arranging the adjectives in the correct order. For example:

cats (two, my)

my two cats

apples (these, three)

these three apples

people (other, four)

four other people

chairs (more, seven)

seven more chairs

1. maps (our, ten)
2. cows (twenty-five, all)
3. book (one, that)

4. socks (other, six)
5. lamps (those, twenty)
6. icicles (two, the)
7. manuscripts (her, three)
8. folders (twelve, these)
9. mistakes (other, seven)
10. pencils (more, two)
11. questions (another, five)
12. children (three, which)

3. Place the adjectives given in brackets before the accompanying nouns, arranging the adjectives in the correct order. For example:

bags (heavy, three)

three heavy bags

windows (two, large, the)

the two large windows

1. envelopes (large, four, her)
2. tables (small, both, the)
3. birds (tiny, those, three)
4. brothers (tall, two, her)
5. quilts (six, thick, all)
6. oats (heavy, his, two)
7. rooms (these, four, huge)
8. pumpkins (ten, his, medium-sized)

4. Place the adjectives given in brackets before the accompanying nouns, arranging the adjectives in the correct order. Make sure that the general descriptive adjectives are separated from one another by commas. For example:

mirror (small, octagonal, the, highly-polished)

the small, highly-polished, octagonal mirror

horses (frisky, their, young, three)

their three frisky, young horses

1. jacket (light, your, short-sleeved)
2. lenses (curved, small, three)
3. puppy (four-week-old, our, damp, warm)
4. discoveries (two, unexpected)
5. carpet (heavy, a, round, thick)

6. climate (humid, hot, the)
7. blankets (dry, warm)
8. table (low, oval, their)

5. Place the adjectives given in brackets before the accompanying nouns, arranging the adjectives in the correct order. For example:

cloth (cotton, purple)

purple cotton cloth

vases (Chinese, blue)

blue Chinese vases

1. tents (canvas, green)
2. houses (Victorian, crimson)
3. curtains (white, lace)
4. cheese (Swiss, yellow)
5. ladders (wooden, brown)
6. blinds (pink, Venetian)
7. hats (felt, black)
8. cabinets (Renaissance, red)

6. Place the adjectives given in brackets before the accompanying nouns, arranging the adjectives in the correct order. Make sure that the general descriptive adjectives are separated from one another by commas. For example:

skirt (beautiful, black, new, velvet, a)

a beautiful, new black velvet skirt

fossils (Devonian, three, white, small)

three small white Devonian fossils

box (brass, her, square, heavy)

her heavy, square brass box

1. belt (green, beautiful, leather, a)
2. hood (dry, his, warm)
3. actors (old, two, Shakespearian, famous)
4. beads (glass, round, blue, tiny)
5. baby (lively, her, six-month-old)
6. dress (satin, a, white, long)
7. steps (narrow, cement, ten)
8. basement (cool, damp, the)
9. wolfhounds (Russian, two, grey, huge)

10. carvings (delicate, sandalwood, three)

7. Rewrite the following phrases, changing the underlined words to defining adjectives. For example:

black boots used for hiking

black hiking boots

a plastic cup used for holding eggs

a plastic egg cup

a green carton used for storing milk

a green milk carton

1. a new beater used for beating eggs
2. a wooden ladle used for serving soup
3. a large tin used for storing cookies
4. an old brush used for scrubbing
5. a glass plate used for baking pies
6. a light shovel used for shoveling snow
7. a metal rack used for storing hats
8. leather shoes used for jogging
9. a small house used for storing boats
10. a wicker basket used for holding bread

8. Paying attention to the usual order of attributive adjectives, place the adjectives given in brackets before the accompanying fixed expressions. Insert commas between the adjectives where appropriate. For example:

cuckoo clock (brown, a, Swiss, small)

a small brown Swiss cuckoo clock

life jackets (foam, thick, orange, three, new)

three thick, new orange foam life jackets

1. watering can (round, a, heavy, metal)
2. salt shaker (white, beautiful, porcelain, her)
3. computer games (Nintendo, new, two, exciting)
4. rose bush (prickly, small, two-year-old, this)
5. table cloths (cotton, these, pink)
6. willow branches (green, trailing, long)
7. fire engines (medium-sized, red, two)
8. coffee cup (his, yellow, heavy)
9. flower beds (heart-shaped, five, beautifully-designed)
10. front door (imposing, the, blue)

11. flower pot (green, big, plastic, that)
12. bath towel (damp, a, white, warm, flannel)
13. city buses (beige, ten, efficient, large)
14. watch dog (one-year-old, fierce, small, their)

9. Explain how the following expressions differ in meaning:

the last interesting chapter

the interesting last chapter

10. Underline the attributive adjectives in the following paragraph, and insert commas where necessary.

At one end of the large old rectangular room was a long low sofa covered with an orange cotton cloth. Against the two wooden arms of the sofa rested red velvet cushions with beautiful long dangling silk tassels. Near the sofa was a small intricately-woven Persian carpet with a fascinating design. Two proud elegant peacocks with shimmering turquoise feathers were depicted against a background of short lush grass, clear reflecting pools, and white marble statues in a delightful palace garden.

11. Paying attention to the types of adjectives which immediately precede the nouns, for each of the following phrases, underline the word or words which receive the most stress in spoken English. For example:

a big black box

a big black <u>box</u>

a yellow straw hat

a yellow <u>straw hat</u>

convenient downtown shopping

convenient <u>downtown shopping</u>

an ordinary Monday morning

an ordinary <u>Monday morning</u>

a towel rack

a <u>towel</u> rack

1. soup bowls
2. a convenient cupboard
3. underwater photography
4. the telephone directory
5. rubber gloves
6. a bread board
7. a sunny day

8. a new kitchen sink
9. long green grass
10. a fine Sunday afternoon
11. a red pencil sharpener
12. the back door
13. a prancing horse
14. an egg beater
15. a gold watch
16. a glass jar
17. a library card
18. the evening star
19. a thick carpet
20. a butter dish

12. Using the Simple Present of the verb to be, rewrite the following phrases as sentences, changing the attributive adjectives to predicate adjectives, and making any other changes that are required. For example:

the strong wind

The wind is strong.

the thick, warm shirts

The shirts are thick and warm.

the lively, interesting, entertaining festivals

The festivals are lively, interesting and entertaining.

the long, broad, well-managed, intensively-cultivated estate

The estate is long, broad, well-managed and intensively-cultivated.

the three-day-old colts

The colts are three days old.

1. the hot water
2. the large, threatening grey clouds
3. the thin blue book
4. the Spanish recipe
5. the one-year-old park
6. the collapsible umbrellas
7. the large white basins
8. the detailed, colorful, captivating painting
9. the two-year-old child
10. the purple cloth

11. the fast, efficient service
12. the ten-month-old houses
13. the intelligent, hard-working, responsible, reliable student
14. the long, well-written, informative letters

13. Paying attention to which adjectives are normally used only attributively and which are normally used only predicatively, write phrases or sentences in which the adjectives shown in brackets modify the accompanying nouns. Write a phrase if the adjective can be used only attributively, and write a sentence if the adjective can be used only predicatively. For example:

nonsense (utter)

utter nonsense

the bird (alive)

The bird is alive.

1. the children (asleep)
2. the street (main)
3. our friends (here)
4. heir assistant (afraid)
5. the consideration (principal)
6. her brother (alone)
7. the performers (ready)
8. the cliffs (sheer)
9. the house (there)
10. the reason (chief)

14. Using the Simple Past tense of the verbs shown in brackets, change the following phrases into sentences in which the adjectives are used as predicate adjectives. For example:

the beautiful music (to sound)

The music sounded beautiful.

the delicious stew (to smell)

The stew smelled delicious.

1. the sour lemon (to taste)
2. the rough surface (to feel)
3. the excited child (to grow)
4. the relieved students (to seem)
5. the awkward silence (to become)
6. the sweet roses (to smell)

7. the golden wheat (to turn)
8. he confident singer (to look)

15. For each of the following sentences, insert commas where appropriate, in order to separate the interpolated adjectives from the rest of the sentence. For example:

The marshes broad and windy stretched as far as the eye could see.

The marshes, broad and windy, stretched as far as the eye could see.

Delighted and encouraged the researchers continued their efforts.

Delighted and encouraged, the researchers continued their efforts.

1. Leaping and dancing the flames lit up the lakeshore.
2. The bells deep and resonant could be heard a mile away.
3. The flowers sweet-smelling and colorful attracted many bees.
4. Sunny and warm the climate was ideal for tourists.
5. The shears heavy and awkward were difficult to use.
6. Beautiful and delicate the flowers could be found only in the high mountains.
7. Twittering and chirping the birds circled overhead.
8. The children silent and attentive watched the magician closely.

16. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with either the present participle or the past participle of the verb shown in brackets. Use a present participle to refer to something being done by the thing being described; and use a past participle to refer to something which has been done to the thing being described. For example:

The evidence is .... (to convince)

The evidence is convincing.

The .... treasure was discovered accidentally. (to hide)

The hidden treasure was discovered accidentally.

1. Yesterday she heard .... news. (to surprise)
2. The ....tools must be returned by five o'clock. (to rent)
3. The .... rabbit stayed perfectly still. (to frighten)
4. We had a .... experience. (to frighten)
5. The play is .... (to entertain)
6. The .... picture hung on the wall. (to complete)
7. That is an .... story. (to interest)
8. The king sat on a .... chair. (to raise)
9. The situation is .... (to alarm)

10. An .... bowl covered the cake. (to invert)
11. The ....lullaby sent the infant to sleep. (to soothe)
12. A ....walkway joined the two buildings. (to cover)
13. They laid the .... clothes on the bed. (to fold)
14. ....smells floated out of the kitchen. (to entice)
15. He stacked the ....wood near the fireplace. (to chop)

17. Each of the following sentences contains an interpolated adjectival phrase which is separated from the noun or pronoun to be modified by another noun or pronoun. For each sentence, underline the word to be modified, and correct the sentence by moving the adjectival phrase so that it is positioned close to the word to be modified. For example:

The bird perched in the tree, folding its wings.

Folding its wings, the bird perched in the tree.

Lighting a cigarette, the door was opened by a young woman.

The door was opened by a young woman, lighting a cigarette.

He searched for his keys, tired from the journey.

Tired from the journey, he searched for his keys.

1. Wanting to entertain us, the story was told to us by a nurse.
2. She decided to apply for the position, attracted by the advertisement.
3. Driving a brightly colored van, the parcel was delivered by a courier.
4. He looked through the book, glancing from time to time at his watch.
5. Wilted from the sun, we replaced the flowers.
6. The fire delighted the children, crackling and throwing off sparks.
7. Our friend made us a cake, wishing to do us a favor.
8. Anticipating an entertaining evening, the arena was soon filled with eager spectators.

18. This exercise contains sentences in which the noun or pronoun to be modified by the interpolated adjectival phrase is missing. Below each sentence is a rewritten, partially corrected version of the sentence. Study the corrections which have already been made, and complete the sentences with personal pronouns which make sense in the sentences. For example:

Incorrect: Following in his footsteps, our destination was soon reached.

Corrected: Following in his footsteps, ... soon reached our destination.

Following in his footsteps, we soon reached our destination.

Incorrect: Finding no one at home, his plans had to be changed.

Corrected: Finding no one at home, ... had to change his plans.

Finding no one at home, he had to change his plans.

1. Incorrect: Anxiously waiting for her guests to appear, the hands of the clock seemed to stand still.

   Corrected: As .... anxiously waited for her guests to appear, the hands of the clock seemed to stand still.

2. Incorrect: Wanting to make a good impression, his hair was carefully combed.

   Corrected: Wanting to make a good impression, ... carefully combed his hair.

3. Incorrect: Knowing what we did, the message was easy to interpret.

   Corrected: Knowing what we did, ...easily interpreted the message.

4. Incorrect: Quickly opening her presents, wrapping paper was scattered all over the floor.

   Corrected: Quickly opening her presents, ... scattered wrapping paper all over the floor.

5. Incorrect: Attempting to dry the dishes, one of the plates slipped out of his hand.

   Corrected: As .... attempted to dry the dishes, one of the plates slipped out of his hand.

6. Incorrect: Having been elected president, her plans could now be carried out.

   Corrected: Having been elected president, ... could now carry out her plans.

7. Incorrect: Wondering what had happened, our questions remained unanswered.

   Corrected: Although ..... wondered what had happened, our questions remained unanswered.

8. Incorrect: Entering the room, all eyes were turned in her direction.

Corrected: As.....entered the room, all eyes were turned in her direction.

9. Incorrect: Rearranging her papers, her notes fell onto the floor.

Corrected: As...........rearranged her papers, her notes fell onto the floor.

10. <u>Incorrect:</u> Pretending not to mind, their disappointment was obvious.

Corrected: Although …..…....pretended not to mind, their disappointment was obvious. **Answers**

19. Explain the two possible meanings of each of the following sentences.
The flag was lowered at noon.
The work was finished yesterday evening.

…………………………………………………………………………………

Answers to exercises 1-19 chapter 21

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. that new bicycle of mine
2. each of the students
3. neither of those leather briefcases
4. these two books of yours
5. some of her latest inventions
6. that second-hand typewriter of his
7. another of their unusual experiences
8. none of these rubber boots
9. that velvet dress of hers
10. any of those black shoes

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. our ten maps
2. all twenty-five cows
3. that one book
4. six other socks
5. those twenty lamps
6. the two icicles
7. her three manuscripts
8. these twelve folders
9. seven other mistakes

10. two more pencils
11. another five questions
12. which three children

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. her four large envelopes
2. both the small tables
3. those three tiny birds
4. her two tall brothers
5. all six thick quilts
6. his two heavy coats
7. these four huge rooms
8. his ten medium-sized pumpkins

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. your light, short-sleeved jacket
2. three small, curved lenses
3. our warm, damp, four-week-old puppy
4. two unexpected discoveries
5. a thick, heavy, round carpet
6. the hot, humid climate
7. warm, dry blankets
8. their low, oval table

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. green canvas tents
2. crimson Victorian houses
3. white lace curtains
4. yellow Swiss cheese
5. brown wooden ladders
6. pink Venetian blinds
7. black felt hats
8. red Renaissance cabinets

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. a beautiful green leather belt
2. his warm, dry hood
3. two famous, old Shakespearian actors
4. tin, round blue glass beads

5. her lively, six-month-old baby
6. a long white satin dress
7. ten narrow cement steps
8. the cool, damp basement
9. two huge grey Russian wolfhounds
10. three delicate sandalwood carvings

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. a new egg beater
2. a wooden soup ladle
3. a large cookie tin
4. an old scrubbing brush
5. a glass pie plate
6. a light snow shovel
7. a metal hat rack
8. leather jogging shoes
9. a small boat house
10. a wicker bread basket

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. a heavy, round metal watering can
2. her beautiful white porcelain salt shaker
3. two exciting, new Nintendo computer games
4. this small, prickly, two-year-old rose bush
5. these pink cotton table cloths
6. long, trailing green willow branches
7. two medium-sized red fire engines
8. his heavy yellow coffee cup
9. five beautifully-designed, heart-shaped flower beds
10. the broad, imposing blue front door
11. that big green plastic flower pot
12. a warm, damp white flannel bath towel
13. ten large, efficient beige city buses
14. their small, fierce, one-year-old watch dog

Answers to Exercise 9:

"The last interesting chapter" means that this chapter is interesting, but none of the following chapters are interesting.

"The interesting last chapter" means that this is the last chapter, and it is interesting.

Answers to Exercise 10:

At one end of the large, old, rectangular room was a long, low sofa covered with an orange cotton cloth. Against the two wooden arms of the sofa rested red velvet cushions with beautiful, long, dangling silk tassels. Near the sofa was a small, intricately-woven Persian carpet with a fascinating design. Two proud, elegant peacocks with shimmering turquoise feathers were depicted against a background of short, lush grass; clear, reflecting pools and white marble statues in a delightful palace garden.

Answers to Exercise 11:

1. soup bowls
2. a convenient cupboard
3. underwater photography
4. the telephone directory
5. rubber gloves
6. a bread board
7. a sunny day
8. a new kitchen sink
9. long green grass
10. a fine Sunday afternoon
11. a red pencil sharpener
12. the back door
13. a prancing horse
14. an egg beater
15. a gold watch
16. a glass jar
17. a library card
18. the evening star
19. a thick carpet
20. a butter dish

Answers to Exercise 12:

1. The water Is hot.
2. The clouds are large, threatening and grey.
3. The book is thin and blue.

4. The recipe is Spanish.
5. The park is one year old.
6. The umbrellas are collapsible.
7. The basins are large and white.
8. The painting is detailed, colorful and captivating.
9. The child is two years old.
10. The cloth is purple.
11. The service is fast and efficient.
12. The houses are ten months old.
13. The student is intelligent, hard-working, responsible and reliable.
14. The letters are long, well-written and informative.

Answers to Exercise 13:

1. The children are asleep.
2. the main street
3. Our friends are here.
4. Their assistant is afraid.
5. the principal consideration
6. Her brother is alone.
7. The performers are ready.
8. the sheer cliffs
9. The house is there.
10. the chief reason

Answers to Exercise 14:

1. The lemon tasted sour.
2. The surface felt rough.
3. The child grew excited.
4. The students seemed relieved.
5. The silence became awkward.
6. The roses smelled sweet.
7. The wheat turned golden.
8. The singer looked confident.

Answers to Exercise 15:

1. Leaping and dancing, the flames lit up the lakeshore.
2. The bells, deep and resonant, could be heard a mile away.

3. The flowers, sweet-smelling and colorful, attracted many bees.
4. Sunny and warm, the climate was ideal for tourists.
5. The shears, heavy and awkward, were difficult to use.
6. Beautiful and delicate, the flowers could be found only in the high mountains.
7. Twittering and chirping, the birds circled overhead.
8. The children, silent and attentive, watched the magician closely.

Answers to Exercise 16:

1. surprising
2. rented
3. frightened
4. frightening
5. entertaining
6. completed
7. interesting
8. raised
9. alarming
10. inverted
11. soothing
12. covered
13. folded
14. Enticing
15. chopped

Answers to Exercise 17:

1. The story was told to us by a nurse, wanting to entertain us.
2. Attracted by the advertisement, she decided to apply for the position.
3. The parcel was delivered by a courier driving a brightly colored van.
4. Glancing from time to time at his watch, he looked through the book.
5. We replaced the flowers, wilted from the sun.
6. Crackling and throwing off sparks, the fire delighted the children.
7. Wishing to do us a favor, our friend made us a cake.

8. The arena was soon filled with eager spectators, anticipating an entertaining evening.

Answers to Exercise 18:

1. she
2. he
3. we
4. she
5. he
6. she
7. we
8. she
9. she
10. they

Answers to Exercise 19:

"The flag was lowered at noon" can mean:

1. At noon, the flag was already down, or At noon, someone lowered the flag.

"The work was finished yesterday evening" can mean:

1. Yesterday evening, the work was already complete, or
2. Yesterday evening, someone finished the work.

(22) Adjectives used in comparisons: Part I

Exercises for chapter (22)

1. Make up your own comparisons, using the pronouns he, she and I with the adjectives given below. For example:

Brave

She is as brave as a lion.

Stubborn

He was as stubborn as a mule.

1. strong
2. beautiful
3. slow
4. frightened
5. busy
6. happy

2. The following table gives the ages of five children:

Child's Name	Age (years)
Ruth	18
Angela	12
Tom	6
May	3
Joe	1

Write sentences comparing the ages of the children in each of the pairs indicated below. Use expressions such as twice, three times, four times, five times, one-half, one-third and one-quarter. For example:

Ruth and Tom

Ruth is three times as old as Tom.

Angela and Tom

Angela is twice as old as Tom

May and Angela

May is one-quarter as old as Angela.

1. Angela and May
2. Tom and May

3. Tom and Angela
4. Ruth and May
5. Tom and Ruth
6. Tom and Joe
7. May and Tom
8. Angela and Joe
9. Joe and May
10. May and Joe

3. Rewrite each of the following sentences as a comparison, using the word or words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

He has a heavy workload. (Tom)

He has as heavy a workload as Tom.

She was a good actress. (her cousin)

She was as good an actress as her cousin.

They are talented musicians. (their parents)

They are as talented musicians as their parents.

1. She is a skilled carpenter. (her father)
2. Terry is an efficient manager. (Kay)
3. They are wonderful performers. (their predecessors)
4. He won a prestigious prize. (his competitor)
5. The white hens are good layers. (the brown ones)
6. Rupert is an able administrator. (his boss)
7. She is carrying a heavy parcel. (you)
8. He is a brilliant engineer. (we had been told)
9. She found an important clue. (anyone)
10. They are experienced directors. (one could wish)

4. Complete each of the following sentences by filling in the blank with the subjective case of the personal pronoun indicated in brackets, followed by the form of the Simple Present of the verb <u>to be</u> which agrees with the pronoun. For example:

I am as clever as ……….....(he, him)

I am as clever as <u>he is</u>.

They are as curious as .... (us, we)

They are as curious as <u>we are.</u>

1. We are as proud as .... (they, them)

2. Henrietta is as silly as .... (your, you)
3. They are as confident as .... (her, she)
4. Amanda is as surprised as .... (I, me)
5. I am not as patient as .... (he, him)
6. Ray is as old as .... (them, they)
7. Dan is as eager to attend the concert as .... (we, us)
8. You are as quick-witted as .... (she, her)
9. She is almost as shy as .... (him, he)
10. Leonora is just as beautiful as .... (me, I)

5. Paying attention to the correct spelling, complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with the comparative forms of the adjectives shown in brackets. For example:

This room is .... than that one. (warm)

This room is warmer than that one.

This sand is .... than that sand. (fine)

This sand is finer than that sand.

My towel is …………..... than yours. (dry)

My towel is drier than yours.

The grass is .... than it was yesterday. (wet)

The grass is wetter than it was yesterday.

There are .... people here than I expected. (few)

There are fewer people here than I expected.

Her room is .... than mine. (neat)

Her room is neater than mine.

1. The village is .... than the city. (pretty)
2. This building is .... than the one next to it. (big)
3. Your watch is .... than mine. (slow)
4. Her roses smell .... than ours. (sweet)
5. The corner store is ....than the supermarket. (close)
6. The temperature is ....today than it was yesterday.(high)
7. His cat is .... than yours. (fat)
8. We arrived .... than she had expected. (soon)
9. It is .... on this side of the valley. (sunny)
10. She is .... than her sister. (young)
11. The afternoon is usually .... than the morning.(hot)
12. He is .... than you are. (weak)

13. The table is .... at this end. (low)
14. This book is .... than that one. (thin)
15. The bag is .... than the suitcase. (heavy)

6. Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with the comparative forms of the irregular adjectives given in brackets. For example:

Pam is a .... student than Roger. (good)

Pam is a better student than Roger.

His cough is ....than yours. (bad)

His cough is worse than yours.

1. I have .... eggs than I need. (many)
2. The bread tastes even .... than the rolls. (good)
3. She does not want to travel .... than necessary. (far)
4. Alice drinks .... coffee than Jerry does. (little)
5. We have .... honey than we need. (much)
6. Things may be .... than you think. (bad)
7. Business is ....this year than it was last year. (good)
8. Alan has .... money than Ben. (little)
9. She has .... self-confidence than I do. (much)
10. The weather was ....yesterday than it is today.(bad)

7. The following table gives the ages and heights of five children:

Child's Name	Age (years)	Height (centimeters)
Nancy	16	150
Dick	15	160
Lorne	12	140
Sara	8	110
Barbara	7	115

Following the model of the examples, write sentences comparing the age or height of the children in each of the following pairs. For example:

Dick and Lorne (age)

Dick is older than Lorne.

Lorne and Dick. (height)

Lorne is shorter than Dick.

Sara and Dick (age)

Sara is younger than Dick.

Dick and Sara (height)

Dick is taller than Sara.

1. Nancy and Dick (age)
2. Dick and Nancy (height)
3. Nancy and Lorne (age)
4. Lorne and Nancy (height)
5. Sara and Lorne (age)
6. Lorne and Sara (height)
7. Sara and Barbara (age)
8. Sara and Barbara (height)
9. Barbara and Sara (age)
10. Barbara and Sara (height)

8. Rewrite the following sentences as comparisons, using the comparative form of the adjective, and the word than. For each sentence, use the word or words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

Tracy is a fast worker. (I am)

Tracy is a faster worker than I am.

He is a kind person. (his brother is)

He is a kinder person than his brother is.

Bob is a good student. (Tom)

Bob is a better student than Tom.

1. She is a fine musician. (her cousin is)
2. He has a strong voice. (he used to have)
3. This chair has short legs. (that one does)
4. We are having a hot summer. (you are)
5. She is a good doctor. (her friend is)
6. He has a big book. (you do)
7. They have new boots. (we do)
8. He took an early train. (I did)
9. She is a bad typist. (her colleague is)
10. We order a sweet dessert. (Susan did)

9. Complete each of the following sentences by filling in the blank with the subjective case of the personal pronoun indicated in brackets, followed by the form of the Simple Present of the verb to be which agrees with the pronoun. For example:

She is luckier than ………......... (I, me)

She is luckier than I am.

We are faster than .... (them, they)

We are faster than they are.

1. She is older than .... (we, us)
2. They are slower than .... (him, he)
3. He is fatter than .... (me, I)
4. You are stronger than .... (they, them)
5. We are younger than .... (her, she)
6. I am taller than .... (he, him)
7. She is shorter than .... (I, me)
8. He is happier than .... (them, they)
9. They are no better than . (us, we)
10. I am thinner than ....(she, her)

10. Rewrite each of the following sentences, using the construction in which the comparative form of the adjective is repeated. For example:

The wind is becoming increasingly strong.

The wind is becoming stronger and stronger.

The bag seemed to grow increasingly heavy.

The bag seemed to grow heavier and heavier.

1. The sky is growing increasingly dark.
2. The grass is becoming increasingly green.
3. Our hands became increasingly dirty.
4. The situation is growing increasingly bad.
5. Their opponents are growing increasingly weak.
6. The mist became increasingly thick.
7. His singing is becoming increasingly good.
8. The trees are growing increasingly tall.
9. The soil is becoming increasingly dry.
10. The time remaining grew increasingly short.

11.Paying attention to the correct spelling, complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with the superlative forms of the adjectives shown in brackets. For example:

He is the .... runner on the team. (fast)

He is the fastest runner on the team.

Have you heard the .... news? (late)

Have you heard the latest news?

They are the .... people I know. (lazy)

They are the laziest people I know.
This is the .... part of the day. (hot)
This is the hottest part of the day.
The black horse was the .... horse in the race. (slow)
The black horse was the slowest horse in the race.
She is the .... student in the class. (poor)
She is the poorest student in the class.

1. This is the .... highway in the country. (wide)
2. That was the .... sunset I have ever seen. (red)
3. Yesterday was the .... day of the year. (cold)
4. This is the .... way to do it. (easy)
5. The kitchen is the .... room in the house. (clean)
6. This is the .... model currently available. (new)
7. This is the .... cake I have ever eaten. (sweet)
8. The third act is the .... part of the play. (sad)
9. The ....temperature on record was minus forty degrees. (low)
10. That is probably the .... thing to do. (wise)
11. This is the .... route into town. (short)
12. She is the .... girl I know. (lucky)

12. Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with the superlative forms of the irregular adjectives shown in brackets. For example:

Pam is the .... student in the class. (good)
Pam is the best student in the class.
That is the …………..... essay I have ever read. (bad)
That is the worst essay I have ever read.

1. This is the ....we have ever traveled in one day. (far)
2. Their farm has produced the .... tomatoes. (many)
3. Our strawberries have the .... flavor. (good)
4. He ate the .... jam. (little)
5. That is the .... news I have heard yet. (bad)
6. She has the .... cheese. (much)
7. They have eaten the .... pancakes. (many)
8. That is the .... thing that could happen. (bad)
9. We have used the .... honey. (much)
10. That is the ....suggestion we have heard yet. (good)

11. This is the .... stretch of road. (bad)

12. They produced the .... butter this year. (little)

13.The following table gives the age, height, and weight of each child in a group of eight children, together with the amount of money possessed by each child. The highest and lowest numbers in each column have been underlined.

Child's Name	Age (years)	Height (cm)	Weight (kg)	Money (dollars)
Denise	12	140	40	90
Ted	11	154	43	70
Ray	10	135	45	25
Bev	9	130	42	100
Carl	8	125	35	10
Amber	7	115	28	30
Victor	6	110	32	20
Sally	5	112	29	15

Following the model of the examples, complete the rest of the sentences, indicating which is the youngest, shortest, heaviest, lightest, richest, and poorest child in the group. For example:

Denise is

Denise is the oldest child in the group.

Ted is

Ted is the tallest child in the group.

1. Ray is

2. Bev is

3. Sally is

4. Victor is

5. Amber is

6. Carl is

14. Rewrite each of the following sentences, changing the positive form of the adjective to the superlative form, and using the definite article the. Use the words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

This is a cold room. (in the house)

This is the coldest room in the house.

That is a good example. (he could find)

That is the best example he could find.

1. This is an old house. (on the street)
2. That is a large store. (in the city)
3. This is a cool evening. (we have had this week)
4. He is a kind man. (I know)
5. This is a fine view. (in the area)
6. That is a new building. (in town)
7. This is a dusty road. (I have ever walked along)
8. That was a bad storm. (we have had for ten years)
9. This is a long river. (in the country)
10. That is a funny story. (you have ever told)

……………………………………………………………………………………

Answers to exercises 1-14 chapter 22

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. He is as strong as an ox.
2. She is as beautiful as a butterfly.
3. He is as slow as a tortoise.
4. She is as frightened as a rabbit.
5. I am as busy as a bee.
6. He is as happy as a lark.

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. Angela is four times as old as May.
2. Tom is twice as old as May.
3. Tom is half as old as Angela.
4. Ruth is six times as old as May.
5. Tom is one-third as old as Ruth.
6. Tom is six times as old as Joe.
7. May is half as old as Tom.
8. Angela is twelve times as old as Joe.
9. Joe is one-third as old as May.
10. May is three times as old as Joe.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. She is as skilled a carpenter as her father.
2. Terry is as efficient a manager as Kay.
3. They are as wonderful performers as their predecessors.
4. He won as prestigious a prize as his competitor.

5. The white hens are as good layers as the brown ones.
6. Rupert is as able an administrator as his boss.
7. She is carrying as heavy a parcel as you.
8. He is as brilliant an engineer as we had been told.
9. She found as important a clue as anyone.
10. They are as experienced directors as one could wish.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. they are
2. you are
3. she is
4. I am
5. he is
6. they are
7. we are
8. she is
9. he is
10. I am

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. prettier
2. bigger
3. slower
4. sweeter
5. closer
6. higher
7. fatter
8. sooner
9. sunnier
10. younger
11. hotter
12. weaker
13. lower
14. thinner
15. heavier

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. more

2. better
3. farther
4. less
5. more
6. worse
7. better
8. less
9. more
10. worse

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. Nancy is older than Dick.
2. Dick is taller than Nancy.
3. Nancy is older than Lorne.
4. Lorne is shorter than Nancy.
5. Sara is younger than Lorne.
6. Lorne is taller than Sara.
7. Sara is older than Barbara.
8. Sara is shorter than Barbara.
9. Barbara is younger than Sara.
10. Barbara is taller than Sara.

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. She is a finer musician than her cousin is.
2. He has a stronger voice than he used to have.
3. This chair has shorter legs than that one does.
4. We are having a hotter summer than you are.
5. She is a better doctor than her friend is.
6. He has a bigger book than you do.
7. They have newer boots than we do.
8. He took an earlier train than I did.
9. She is a worse typist than her colleague is..
10. We ordered a sweeter dessert than Susan did.

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. we are
2. he is
3. I am

4. they are
5. she is
6. he is
7. I am
8. they are
9. we are
10. she is

Answers to Exercise 10:

1. The sky is growing darker and darker.
2. The grass is becoming greener and greener.
3. Our hands became dirtier and dirtier.
4. The situation is growing worse and worse.
5. Their opponents are growing weaker and weaker.
6. The mist became thicker and thicker.
7. His singing is becoming better and better.
8. The trees are growing taller and taller.
9. The soil is becoming drier and drier.
10. The time remaining grew shorter and shorter.

Answers to Exercise 11:

1. widest
2. reddest
3. coldest
4. easiest
5. cleanest
6. newest
7. sweetest
8. saddest
9. lowest
10. wisest
11. shortest
12. luckiest

Answers to Exercise 12:

1. farthest
2. most
3. best

4. least
5. worst
6. most
7. most
8. worst
9. most
10. best
11. worst
12. least

Answers to Exercise 13:

1. Ray is the heaviest child in the group.
2. Bev is the richest child in the group.
3. Sally is the youngest child in the group.
4. Victor is the shortest child in the group.
5. Amber is the lightest child in the group.
6. Carl is the poorest child in the group.

Answers to Exercise 14:

1. This is the oldest house on the street.
2. That is the largest store in the city.
3. This is the coolest evening we have had this week.
4. He is the kindest man I know.
5. This is the finest view in the area.
6. That is the newest building in town.
7. This is the dustiest road I have ever walked along.
8. That was the worst storm we have had for ten years.
9. This is the longest river in the country.
10. That is the funniest story you have ever told.

(23) Adjectives used in comparisons: Part 2

Exercises

1. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the comparative form of the adjective indicated in brackets. For example:

They are .... than they used to be. (careful)

They are more careful than they used to be.

1. Wool is .... than cotton. (resilient)
2. He is .... than I had expected. (excited)
3. She is a .... scholar than her sister is. (diligent)
4. Bev is a ....engineer than Pat .(experienced)
5. Russian is a ....language to learn than English is .(difficult)
6. This book is .... than that one. (interesting)

2. Paying attention to which adjectives form the comparative with the adverb more and which form the comparative with the ending er, fill in the blanks with the comparative forms of the adjectives indicated in brackets. For example:

The clothes are ....than I had expected. (dry)

The clothes are drier than I had expected.

Walter Scott is .... than Walter Brooks. (famous)

Walter Scott is more famous than Walter Brooks.

1. The pears are .... than the plums. (hard)
2. The roses are..............................than the nasturtiums.(beautiful)
3. The tomatoes are ....than the apples. (expensive)
4. My bicycle is .... than yours. (new)
5. Cold lemonade is .... than water. (refreshing)
6. The front yard is .... than the back yard. (big)
7. This map is .... than that one. (good)
8. Spinach is .... than Swiss chard. (delicate)
9. His room is .... than yours. (tidy)
10. Her report is .... than ours. (accurate)

3. Paying attention to which adjectives form the comparative with the adverb more and which form the comparative with the ending er, rewrite the following sentences as comparisons, in the manner indicated by the

examples. Use the words given in brackets as the second parts of the comparisons. For example:

Collies have long hair. (Dalmatians do)

Collies have longer hair than Dalmatians do.

He is an experienced architect. (we thought)

He is a more experienced architect than we thought.

1. Terry is a good cook. (I am)
2. That is a complex question. (you realize)
3. My puppy has big feet. (yours does)
4. It was a difficult decision. (you might think)
5. That is a sandy part of the beach. (this is)
6. He runs a successful business. (his father did)
7. Cliff has a bad temper. (his brother does)
8. This rose bush has small flowers. (that one does)
9. They own expensive bicycles. (we do)
10. Robin proved to be a courageous leader. (anyone had expected)
11. The school has a large auditorium. (the city library does)
12. That car has an efficient engine. (this one does)

4. Paying attention to which adjectives form the comparative with the ending er and which form the comparative with the adverb more, rewrite each of the following sentences, using the construction in which the word more or the comparative form of the adjective is repeated. For example:

The water grew increasingly warm.

The water grew warmer and warmer.

I became increasingly impatient.

I became more and more impatient.

1. The rain became increasingly heavy.
2. The crowd grew increasingly enthusiastic.
3. We became increasingly uneasy.
4. Manufacturing companies were becoming increasingly large.
5. The weather grew increasingly bad.
6. The compilation of accurate statistics is becoming increasingly necessary.
7. Methods of diagnosis are becoming increasingly accurate.
8. Their contribution to the project became increasingly important.
9. Standards are becoming increasingly high.

10. They became increasingly optimistic.

5. Rewrite each of the following sentences as comparisons, using the form of the adjective with less and the word than. For each sentence, use the words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

The plot of the movie was predictable. (we expected)

The plot of the movie was less predictable than we expected.

The second explanation was confusing. (the first)

The second explanation was less confusing than the first.

1. The issue is important. (I thought)
2. The train is punctual. (it used to be)
3. The spoons are valuable. (the candlesticks)
4. Nora is excited. (Karen is)
5. The bus is crowded. (the subway)
6. This movie is entertaining. (the one we saw last night)

6. Rewrite each of the following sentences, using the construction in which the word less is repeated. For example:

The idea became decreasingly attractive.

The idea became less and less attractive.

1. The wind grew decreasingly fierce.
2. The tune became decreasingly recognizable.
3. Word processors are becoming decreasingly expensive.
4. The rainbow grew decreasingly bright.
5. The children became decreasingly alert.
6. The service became decreasingly convenient.

7. Paying attention to which adjectives form the superlative with the adverb most and which form the superlative with the ending est, fill in the blanks with the superlative forms of the adjectives indicated in brackets. For example:

The first question is the .... (difficult)

The first question is the most difficult.

The last question is the .... (easy)

The last question is the easiest.

1. Sarah is the .... girl in the class. (intelligent)
2. He is the .... boy in the school. (lucky)
3. This is the That is the ....painting in the museum. (valuable)
4. Yesterday was the .... day of the year. (hot)

5. She is the .... student in the school. (new)
6. This movie is the .... (entertaining)
7. He is the .... man in the village. (brave)
8. Summer is usually the .... time of the year. (dry)
9. He is the .... player on the team. (talented)
10. This is the .... route into town. (direct)
11. The library is the ....building on the street. (old)

8. Paying attention to whether the noun to be modified is countable or uncountable, complete each of the following sentences by filling in the blank with the correct adjective chosen from the pair given in brackets. For example:

.......schools were closed because of the snowstorm.(many, much)

Many schools were closed because of the snowstorm.

.... time could have been saved. (many, much)

Much time could have been saved.

There are ....buildings as beautiful as the Taj Mahal. (few, little)

There are few buildings as beautiful as the Taj Mahal.

There was .... furniture in the room. (few, little)

There was little furniture in the room.

The storm caused ....damage than had been expected. (fewer, less)

The storm caused less damage than had been expected.

1. There are .... ducks in the park. (many, much)
2. .... water is left in the pond. (few, little)
3. .... authors are as famous as Shakespeare. (few, little)
4. How .... rice do you have? (many, much)
5. There are .... books on the subject which she has not read. (few, little)
6. .... attention has been paid to the importance of the mass media. (many, much)
7. .... people prefer soccer to football. (many, much)
8. There are .... stores downtown than there are in the suburbs. (fewer, less)
9. .... information was available. (few, little)
10. .... sports are as fast-paced as hockey. (few, little)
11. She made the .... mistakes of all the children in the class. (fewest, least)

12. .... work remains to be done. (few, little)

13. There is often .... wind in the evening than there is at midday. (fewer, less)

14. He does not have .... money. (many, much)

15. He did the ....work of all the boys in the class . (fewest, least)

16. She told ....stories to amuse the children. (many, much)

9. The following table shows the number of books and amount of money possessed by each of eight children.

Child's Name	Number of Books	Amount of Money($)
Debbie	12	20
Penny	6	30
Alex	4	10
Tim	24	5
Chris	8	2
Lisa	3	15
Terry	16	6
Helen	2	3

Following the model of the examples, use the adjectives much and many to write sentences comparing the number of books or the amount of money possessed by the children in each of the following pairs. For example:

Debbie and Penny (books)

Debbie has twice as many books as Penny.

Alex and Debbie (money)

Alex has half as much money as Debbie.

Lisa and Helen (money)

Lisa has five times as much money as Helen.

1. Penny and Alex (money)
2. Chris and Terry (books)
3. Penny and Lisa (books)
4. Debbie and Tim (money)
5. Tim and Alex (money)
6. Penny and Tim (books)
7. Terry and Helen (money)
8. Terry and Helen (books)
9. Tim and Chris (books)

10. Penny and Tim (money)

10. Rewrite each of the following sentences as a comparison, using the comparative form of the underlined adjective, and the word than. Note that the phrase a great deal of is used instead of the adjective much. For each sentence, use the word or words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

We took many photographs. (he did)

We took more photographs than he did.

He drinks a great deal of coffee. (tea)

He drinks more coffee than tea.

She has few responsibilities. (I do)

She has fewer responsibilities than I do.

There is little danger. (you think)

There is less danger than you think.

1. She reads many books. (I do)
2. They have had little success. (you have)
3. We bought a great deal of rice. (flour)
4. We had few accidents, we had expected)
5. The proposal has many advantages. (disadvantages)
6. She uses a great deal of honey. (sugar)
7. We eat little cheese. (meat)
8. They entertain few visitors. (we do)
9. He can speak many languages. (anyone else I know)
10. They have few customers. (they would like)
11. The project will take a great deal of time. (you think)
12. This stove requires little fuel. (one would expect)

11. Rewrite each of the following sentences as a progressive comparison using the comparative form of the underlined adjective. For example:

Many ducks flew overhead.

More and more ducks flew overhead.

Few leaves were falling.

Fewer and fewer leaves were falling.

1. We had many adventures.
2. Few visitors remained.
3. There was little danger that we would lose our way.
4. Few trees were planted.

5. Many tourists visit our city each year.
6. I saw few cars on the road.
7. he weather caused little difficulty.
8. They met many people.

12. Write three sentences of your own, using the phrases similar to, different from and the same as.

13. Rewrite each of the following sentences, keeping the meaning of the sentence, but using one of the phrases similar to, different from or the same as, as appropriate. Make sure that the verb of the rewritten sentence agrees with the subject of the sentence. For example:

My essay and your essay are similar.

My essay is similar to your essay.

Their results and our results are different.

Their results are different from our results.

The price of the scarf and the price of the gloves are the same.

The price of the scarf is the same as the price of the gloves.

1. My skates and his skates look similar.
2. This book and that book are different.
3. The child's height and the height of the table are the same.
4. This story and that story seem similar.
5. The date of the concert and the date of the play are the same.
6. The view from the window and the view from the door are different.
7. My sister and my cousin look similar.
8. This cake and that cake taste the same.
9. My experiences and your experiences are different.
10. His schedule and your schedule are the same.

14. Each of the following sentences contains a comparison which is logically incorrect. Rewrite the sentences, adding whatever nouns or phrases are necessary in order to make the comparisons logically correct. For example:

The price of honey was higher than sugar.

The price of honey was higher than the price of sugar.

The average rainfall for September is the same as February.

The average rainfall for September is the same as the average rainfall for February.

1. The vegetation of Europe differs from North America.

2. The taxes in Singapore are lower than Canada.

3. The invention of the clarinet occurred more recently than the flute.

4. The speed limit in residential areas is lower than uninhabited areas.

5. The grammar of English is simpler than Arabic.

6. The climate of California is somewhat similar to Greece.

7. The boiling point of oil is higher than water.

8. The geometry of a pentagon is more complex than a square.

9. The density of water is greater than ice.

10. The location of the library is more convenient than the post office.

15. **Simplify each of the following sentences by using <u>that</u> or <u>those</u> to replace the noun or phrase which is repeated in the second part of the comparison. For example:**

The song of the chickadee is more melodious than the song of the nuthatch.

The song of the chickadee is more melodious than <u>that</u> of the nuthatch.

The landforms of eastern Canada are similar to the landforms of Finland.

The landforms of eastern Canada are similar to those of Finland.

1. The cuisine of France is more famous than the cuisine of England.
2. The fruits of the tropics are more varied than the fruits of temperate regions.
3. The growth form of the strawberry differs from the growth form of the raspberry.
4. The freezing point of salt water is lower than the freezing point of fresh water.
5. The traditions of Austria are as fascinating as the traditions of Greece.
6. The nutritional value of whole grain flour is greater than the nutritional value of refined flour.
7. The mountains of Nepal are higher than the mountains of Europe.
8. The teaching methods of today differ from the teaching methods of one hundred years ago.
9. The tone of an old violin is often more beautiful than the tone of a new violin.

10. The flowers of alpine pastures are more colorful than the flowers of the lowlands.

....

Answers to exercises 1-15 chapter 23

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. more resilient
2. more excited
3. more diligent
4. more experienced
5. more difficult
6. more interesting

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. harder
2. more beautiful
3. more expensive
4. newer
5. more refreshing
6. bigger
7. better
8. more delicate
9. tidier
10. more accurate

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. Terry is a better cook than I am.
2. That is a more complex question than you realize.
3. My puppy has bigger feet than yours does.
4. It was a more difficult decision than you might think.
5. That is a sandier part of the beach than this is.
6. He runs a more successful business than his father did.
7. Cliff has a worse temper than his brother does.
8. This rose bush has smaller flowers than that one does.
9. They own more expensive bicycles than we do.
10. Robin proved to be a more courageous leader than anyone had expected.
11. The school has a larger auditorium than the city library does.

12. That car has a more efficient engine than this one does.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. The rain became heavier and heavier.
2. The crowd grew more and more enthusiastic.
3. We became more and more uneasy.
4. Manufacturing companies were becoming larger and larger.
5. The weather grew worse and worse.
6. The compilation of accurate statistics is becoming more and more necessary.
7. Methods of diagnosis are becoming more and more accurate.
8. Their contribution to the project became more and more important.
9. Standards are becoming higher and higher.
10. They became more and more optimistic.

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. The issue is less important than I thought.
2. The train is less punctual than it used to be.
3. The spoons are less valuable than the candlesticks.
4. Nora is less excited than Karen is.
5. The bus is less crowded than the subway.
6. This movie is less entertaining than the one we saw last night.

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. The wind grew less and less fierce.
2. The tune became less and less recognizable.
3. Word processors are becoming less and less expensive.
4. The rainbow grew less and less bright.
5. The children became less and less alert.
6. The service became less and less convenient.

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. most intelligent
2. luckiest
3. best
4. most valuable
5. hottest
6. newest

7. most entertaining
8. bravest
9. driest
10. most talented
11. most direct
12. oldest

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. many
2. Little
3. Few
4. much
5. few
6. Much
7. Many
8. fewer
9. Little
10. Few
11. fewest
12. Little
13. less
14. much
15. least
16. many

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. Penny has three times as much money as Alex.
2. Chris has half as many books as Terry.
3. Penny has twice as many books as Lisa.
4. Debbie has four times as much money as Tim.
5. Tim has half as much money as Alex.
6. Penny has one-quarter as many books as Tim.
7. Terry has twice as much money as Helen.
8. Terry has eight times as many books as Helen.
9. Tim has three times as many books as Chris.
10. Penny has six times as much money as Tim.

Answers to Exercise 10:

1. She reads more books than I do.
2. They have had less success than you have.
3. We bought more rice than flour.
4. We had fewer accidents than we had expected.
5. The proposal has more advantages than disadvantages.
6. She uses more honey than sugar.
7. We eat less cheese than meat.
8. They entertain fewer visitors than we do.
9. He can speak more languages than anyone else I know.
10. They have fewer customers than they would like.
11. The project will take more time than you think.
12. This stove requires less fuel than one would expect.

Answers to Exercise 11:

1. We had more and more adventures.
2. Fewer and fewer visitors remained.
3. There was less and less danger that we would lose our way.
4. Fewer and fewer trees were planted.
5. More and more tourists visit our city each year.
6. I saw fewer and fewer cars on the road.
7. The weather caused us less and less difficulty.
8. They met more and more people.

Answers to Exercise 13:

1. My skates look similar to his skates.
2. This book is different from that book.
3. The child's height is the same as the height of the table.
4. This story seems similar to that story.
5. The date of the concert is the same as the date of the play.
6. The view from the window is different from the view from the door.
7. My sister looks similar to my cousin.
8. This cake tastes the same as that cake.
9. My experiences are different from your experiences.
10. His schedule is the same as your schedule.

Answers to Exercise 14:

1. The vegetation of Europe differs from the vegetation of North America.

2. The taxes in Singapore are lower than the taxes in Canada.

3. The invention of the clarinet occurred more recently than the invention of the flute.

4. The speed limit in residential areas is lower than the speed limit in uninhabited areas.

5. The grammar of English is simpler than the grammar of Arabic.

6. The climate of California is somewhat similar to the climate of Greece.

7. The boiling point of oil is higher than the boiling point of water.

8. The geometry of a pentagon is more complex than the geometry of a square.

9. The density of water is greater than the density of ice.

10. The location of the library is more convenient than the location of the post office.

Answers to Exercise 15:

1. The cuisine of France is more famous than that of England.
2. The fruits of the tropics are more varied than those of temperate regions.
3. The growth form of the strawberry differs from than of the raspberry.
4. The freezing point of salt water is lower than that of fresh water.
5. The traditions of Austria are as fascinating as those of Greece.
6. The nutritional value of whole grain flour is greater than that of refined flour.
7. The mountains of Nepal are higher than those of Europe.
8. The teaching methods of today differ from those of one hundred years ago.
9. The tone of an old violin is often more beautiful than that of a new violin.
10. The flowers of alpine pastures are more colorful than those of the lowlands.

(24) Adverbs: Position in a sentence

Exercises

1. Rewrite each of the following sentences, placing the adverb of frequency given in brackets in the middle position of the main clause. For example:

She is late for work. (rarely)

She is rarely late for work.

We visit him on Sundays. (sometimes)

We sometimes visit him on Sundays.

I have read that book before. (never)

I have never read that book before.

Yes, I do. (usually)

Yes, I usually do.

1. I had wanted to see the ocean. (always)
2. They do. (frequently)
3. She is very friendly. (usually)
4. They have the opportunity to travel. (seldom)
5. I am at home in the mornings. (generally)
6. He has. (always)
7. We were given free transportation to the school. (frequently)
8. Birds return to the place where they were born to build their nests. (often)
9. Albatrosses are seen close to shore. (seldom)
10. We would. (never)
11. They follow the news. (rarely)
12. Maple wood is used to make violins. (sometimes)

2. Rewrite each of the following sentences, placing the adverb of frequency given in brackets in the middle position of the main clause. For example:

Have you visited New York? (ever)

Have you ever visited New York?

I do not go to the library on the weekend. (always)

I do not always go to the library on the weekend.

1. He did not arrive on time. (ever)
2. Do you visit Boston? (often)
3. Are they surprised at the results? (frequently)

4. The children do not follow our instructions. (always)
5. Do you wonder what will happen next? (sometimes)
6. Did they find the missing information? (ever)
7. We do not stay out after dark. (usually)
8. The facts are not known. (generally)

3. For each of the following sentences, place the adverbs given in brackets in their most usual positions in the sentence. Place connecting adverbs in the beginning position, place adverbs of frequency in the middle position, and place adverbs of manner and adverbs of time in the end position. Adverbs of manner should precede adverbs of time. For example:

They left. (early, usually)

They usually left early.

We proceeded. (cautiously, therefore)

Therefore, we proceeded cautiously.

We will review our options. (tomorrow, carefully)

We will review our options carefully tomorrow.

1. We pick the flowers. (carefully, usually)
2. She answers. (correctly, rarely)
3. He is wrong. (however, seldom)
4. We will attend the concert. (therefore, tonight)
5. We found the hotel. (easily, nevertheless)
6. They left. (quietly, this morning)
7. She wins first prize. (always, furthermore)
8. He finished. (late, often)
9. We reached the station. (quickly, consequently)
10. You speak. (loudly, never)
11. We would have gone to the beach. (otherwise, yesterday)
12. They worked. (quickly, today)
13. I want to analyze the book. (carefully, sometime)
14. We arrive. (early, sometimes)

4. The following sentences do not contain verbs of motion. Complete each sentence by placing the adverbs and adverb phrases given in brackets in the end position, in the following order:

Adverb of Manner

Adverb of Location

Adverb of Time

Adverb of Purpose

For example:

The tickets sold. (at the box office, quickly, this afternoon)

The tickets sold quickly at the box office this afternoon.

I bought some film. (to photograph the parade, at the store, yesterday)

I bought some film at the store yesterday to photograph the parade.

1. We ate. (at the restaurant, well, yesterday evening)
2. They will be. (next month, on business, in France)
3. The children whispered. (on Christmas Eve, excitedly, in front of the tree)
4. We hung the picture. (on the wall, carefully)
5. The birds twittered. (this morning, outside the window, loudly)
6. The boys and girls waited. (for the parade to pass by, impatiently)
7. We slept. (all afternoon, on the grass, soundly)
8. The choir sang. (last week, beautifully, at the competition)
9. We watched the skaters. (to determine who might win the competition, avidly, this morning)
10. The moon shone. (over the water, long after the sun had set, brilliantly)

5. For each of the following sentences, paying attention to whether or not the sentence contains a verb of motion, place the adverbs and adverb phrases given in brackets in the correct order in the end position of the sentence. For example:

He lived. (for six years, happily, in Copenhagen)

He lived happily in Copenhagen for six years.

They returned. (from Holland, last week, unexpectedly)

They returned from Holland unexpectedly last week.

1. They stood. (at the bus stop, for twenty minutes, patiently)
2. We arrived. (here, last night, on foot)
3. The young child walked. (by herself, this morning, to school)
4. They were waiting. (at seven o'clock, eagerly, outside the fairgrounds)
5. She arrived. (in a black limousine, at the hotel)
6. Chickadees build their nests. (in dense evergreens, in the early spring, secretively)

7. The waves crashed. (against the shore, loudly)
8. I walked. (in the rain, to work, yesterday)
9. He sat. (until the announcements were finished, on the edge of his chair, expectantly)
10. We left. (this morning, home, in a hurry)
11. She went. (by bus, downtown, today)
12. They talked. (for an hour, animatedly, on the front lawn)

6. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with is or are, as appropriate. For example:

Here ....one of the computations.

Here <u>is</u> one of the computations.

There ....all of the results.

There <u>are</u> all of the results.

1. There .... his brother and sister.
2. Here .... the news.
3. There .... several of her classmates.
4. Here .... both of the disks.
5. There .... a pair of pliers.
6. Here .... a few chocolates.
7. Here .... a box of eggs.
8. There .... two of the books.
9. Here .... another of the magazines.
10. Here .... some of the answers.
11. There .... one of his brothers.
12. Here .... the essays.

7. Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the underlined phrases with personal pronouns, and changing the word order as necessary. For example:

Over the treetops sailed <u>the kite</u>.

Over the treetops <u>it</u> sailed.

Here comes <u>our teacher</u>.

Here <u>he</u> comes.

1. Up the stairs dashed <u>the reporter.</u>
2. Onto the stage glided <u>the ballerina</u>.
3. Here is <u>the butter</u>.
4. There go the geese.

5. To and fro rode the girl on the horse.
6. Here come the children.
7. High in the heavens shone the lights of a million stars.
8. There goes the train.
9. Into the hotel darted the boy.
10. Here are your keys.
11. Over the grass rolled the ball.
12. There is my aunt.

8. The following sentences are incorrect, because each contains a double negative. Each sentence can be corrected by omitting or altering one of the negative expressions. Write two corrected versions for each sentence. For example:

We have not got no sugar.

We have got no sugar.

or We have not got any sugar.

I have never seen nothing like it before.

I have seen nothing like it before.

or I have never seen anything like it before.

1. He does not need no advice.
2. We never go nowhere interesting.
3. I did not get none of the answers right.
4. She does not know nothing.
5. We had not met neither of the boys before.
6. They did not do no harm.
7. He never speaks to nobody.
8. You do not have no reason to behave like that.
9. I do not know nothing about it.
10. I do not have no time for such things.

9. For each of the following sentences, add the negative expression shown in brackets at the beginning of the sentence, and make any other changes that are necessary. For example:

I had reached home when I remembered the message. (hardly)

Hardly had I reached home when I remembered the message.

We had the opportunity to do whatever we wanted. (seldom)

Seldom did we have the opportunity to do whatever we wanted.

1. We had entered the room when the telephone rang. (scarcely)

2. I have seen a more beautiful ballet than that one. (never)
3. We realized that a dangerous stretch of road lay ahead of us. (little)
4. I have worked as hard as I could. (never before)
5. A writer can express his exact feelings in words. (rarely)
6. We perceive everything that is around us. (hardly ever)
7. One can find a more striking example of erosion than the Grand Canyon. (nowhere)
8. They guessed what was about to happen. (little)
9. I am entirely satisfied with my situation. (seldom)
10. One comprehends a complex situation immediately. (rarely)

10. Paying attention to the correct word order, rewrite the underlined indirect questions as direct questions. For example:

I would like to know <u>why you are here</u>.

Why are you here?

I wonder <u>how often he comes here</u>.

How often does he come here?

Tell me <u>where you have been</u>.

Where have you been?

1. I want to know <u>how much money you collected</u>.
2. I wonder <u>where they were</u>.
3. Tell me <u>why I should attend the meeting</u>.
4. I would like to know <u>when he finds time for his hobbies.</u>
5. Do you know <u>why she left school</u>?
6. I am curious to know <u>how many times you have seen this movie</u>.
7. Will you tell me <u>when you completed the assignment</u>?
8. He will ask <u>how long it will take</u>.
9. Tell me <u>where you are</u>.
10. I wonder <u>why she did not reply</u>.
11. Find out <u>when the bank opens</u>.
12. Can you tell me <u>where she is staying</u>?

11. Paying attention to the correct word order, use the phrases given in brackets to rewrite the following direct questions as indirect questions. For example:

Where is the nearest store? (Please find out)

Please find out where the nearest store is.
How many boxes of paper did he order? (We need to know)
We need to know how many boxes of paper he ordered.
Why has she not finished the assignment? (I will ask her)
I will ask her why she has not finished the assignment.

1. Why is the information not here? (Please tell me)
2. When will they finish work? (Did you ask)
3. Where has she studied? (I wonder)
4. How many pounds of cherries did you sell? (Tell us)
5. Why was the meeting cancelled? (Will you tell me)
6. How long will the trip take? (I wonder)
7. How is he? (Did you hear)
8. Why do they have difficulty with the work? (I wonder)
9. When does she plan to leave? (Ask her)
10. How much time do you have? (Please let me know)
11. Where is the post office? (I am not sure)
12. Where did you buy that book? (Tell me)

…………………………………………………………………………………

Chapter 24 – Answers for Exercise 1-11

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. I had always wanted to see the ocean.
2. They frequently do.
3. She is usually very friendly.
4. They seldom have the opportunity to travel.
5. I am generally at home in the mornings.
6. He always has.
7. We were frequently given free transportation to the school.
8. Birds often return to the place where they were born to build their nests.
9. Albatrosses are seldom seen close to shore.
10. We never would.
11. They rarely follow the news.
12. Maple wood is sometimes used to make violins.

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. He did not ever arrive on time.

2. Do you often visit Boston?
3. Are they frequently surprised at the results?
4. The children do not always follow our instructions.
5. Do you sometimes wonder what will happen next?
6. Did they ever find the missing information?
7. We do not usually stay out after dark.
8. The facts are not generally known.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. We usually pick the flowers carefully.
2. She rarely answers correctly.
3. However, he is seldom wrong.
4. Therefore, we will attend the concert tonight.
5. Nevertheless, we found the hotel easily.
6. They left quietly this morning.
7. Furthermore, she always wins first prize.
8. He often finished late.
9. Consequently, we reached the station quickly.
10. You never speak loudly.
11. Otherwise, we would have gone to the beach yesterday.
12. They worked quickly today.
13. I want to analyze the book carefully sometime.
14. We sometimes arrive early.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. We ate well at the restaurant yesterday evening.
2. They will be in France next month on business.
3. The children whispered excitedly in front of the tree on Christmas Eve.
4. We hung the picture carefully on the wall.
5. The birds twittered loudly outside the window this morning.
6. The boys and girls waited impatiently for the parade to pass by.
7. We slept soundly on the grass all afternoon.
8. The choir sang beautifully at the competition last week.
9. We watched the skaters avidly this morning, to determine who might win the competition.

10. The moon shone brilliantly over the water long after the sun had set.

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. They stood patiently at the bus stop for twenty minutes.

2. We arrived here on foot last night.

3. The young child walked to school by herself this morning.

4. They were waiting eagerly outside the fairgrounds at seven o'clock.

5. She arrived at the hotel in a black limousine.

6. Chickadees build their nests secretively in dense evergreens in the early spring.

7. The waves crashed loudly against the shore.

8. I walked to work in the rain yesterday.

9. He sat expectantly on the edge of his chair until the announcements were finished.

10. We left home in a hurry this morning.

11. She went downtown by bus today.

12. They talked animatedly on the front lawn for an hour.

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. are

2. is

3. are

4. are

5. is

6. are

7. is

8. are

9. is

10. are

11. is

12. are

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. Up the stairs he (or she) dashed.

2. Onto the stage she glided.

3. Here it is.

4. There <u>they</u> go.
5. To and fro <u>she</u> rode.
6. Here <u>they</u> come.
7. High in the heavens <u>they</u> shone.
8. There <u>it</u> goes.
9. Into the hotel <u>he</u> darted.
10. Here <u>they</u> are.
11. Over the grass <u>it</u> rolled.
12. There <u>she</u> is.

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. He needs no advice. <u>or</u> He does not need any advice.
2. We go nowhere interesting. <u>or</u> We never go anywhere interesting.
3. I got none of the answers right. <u>or</u> I did not get any of the answers right.
4. She knows nothing. <u>or</u> She does not know anything.
5. We had met neither of the boys before. <u>or</u> We had not met either of the boys before.
6. They did no harm. <u>or</u> They did not do any harm.
7. He speaks to nobody. <u>or</u> He never speaks to anybody.
8. You have no reason to behave like that. <u>or</u> You do not have any reason to behave like that.
9. I know nothing about it. <u>or</u> I do not know anything about it.
10. I have no time for such things. <u>or</u> I do not have any time for such things.

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. Scarcely had we entered the room when the telephone rang.
2. Never have I seen a more beautiful ballet than that one.
3. Little did we realize that a dangerous stretch of road lay ahead of us.
4. Never before have I worked as hard as I could.
5. Rarely can a writer express his exact feelings in words.
6. Hardly ever do we perceive everything that is around us.
7. Nowhere can one find a more striking example of erosion than the Grand Canyon.

8. Little did they guess what was about to happen.
9. Seldom am I entirely satisfied with my situation.
10. Rarely does one comprehend a complex situation immediately.

Answers to Exercise 10:

1. How much money did you collect?
2. Where were they?
3. Why should I attend the meeting?
4. When does he find time for his hobbies?
5. Why did she leave school?
6. How many times have you seen this movie?
7. When did you complete the assignment?
8. How long will it take?
9. Where are you?
10. Why did she not reply?
11. When does the bank open?
12. Where is she staying?

Answers to Exercise 11:

1. Please tell me why the information is not here.
2. Did you ask when they will finish work?
3. I wonder where she has studied.
4. Tell us how many pounds of cherries you sold.
5. Will you tell me why the meeting was cancelled?
6. I wonder how long the trip will take.
7. Did you hear how he is?
8. I wonder why they have difficulty with the work.
9. Ask her when she plans to leave.
10. Please let me know how much time you have.
11. I am not sure where the post office is.
12. Tell me where you bought that book.

(25) Adverbs of manner and adverbs used in comparisons

Exercises for chapter (25)

1. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the adverb which corresponds to the adjective given in brackets. For example:

The letter was .... legible. (scarce)

The letter was <u>scarcely</u> legible.

He did the work as .... as possible. (careful)

He did the work as <u>carefully</u> as possible.

They won the game .... (easy)

They won the game <u>easily</u>.

She handled the situation very .... (capable)

She handled the situation very <u>capably</u>.

I ....expected that to happen. (full)

I <u>fully</u> expected that to happen.

The view was ....magnificent. (true)

The view was <u>truly</u> magnificent.

The theory has never been .... proved. (scientific)

The theory has never been <u>scientifically</u> proved.

1. I was .... impressed by their courage. (due)
2. The children chattered .... (noisy)
3. he sun shone .... behind the clouds. (pale)
4. They have settled in .... (comfortable)
5. He .... maintained his point of view. (dogmatic)
6. Everything is proceeding .... (normal)
7. Please drive .... (slow)
8. She worked .... until nine o'clock. (steady)
9. The cost of fuel has risen .... (dramatic)
10. He .... scrambled up the slope. (agile)
11. Everything was explained clearly and .... (simple)
12. The train whistle blew .... at the crossing. (shrill)
13. .... it stopped raining before we had to leave. (lucky)
14. She was signaling .... (frantic)

15. That was .... unexpected. (whole)
16. We arrived .... (punctual)
17. England is a .... populated country. (dense)
18. They are .... dependent on coal for fuel. (sole)
19. The material was produced .... (synthetic)
20. They .... agreed to the proposal. (ready)

2. For each of the following sentences, fill in the blank with the adverb which corresponds to the adjective given in brackets. For example:

He hit the ball .... (hard)

He hit the ball <u>hard</u>.

The newspaper is delivered .... (daily)

The newspaper is delivered <u>daily.</u>

She did ……....... in the competition. (good)

She did <u>well</u> in the competition.

Please close the door .... (quiet)

Please close the door <u>quietly.</u>

1. I drove .... home. (straight)
2. We came to work .... (early)
3. She .... filled in the answers. (quick)
4. He like to drive .... (fast)
5. We proceeded .... (cautious)
6. He threw the ball .... into the air. (high)
7. How .... do you know her? (good)
8. We arrived .... (late)
9. They did the work .... (bad)
10. He spoke .... (little)
11. The gathering is held . (annual)
12. They replied .... (immediate)
13. The workers met .... (weekly)
14. I will deal with that problem .... (first)
15. They were ....dressed for the occasion. (suitable)

3. For each of the following sentences, pay attention to whether the word to be placed in the blank modifies a noun or a verb, and complete the sentence with either the adjective given in brackets or the corresponding adverb, as appropriate. For example:

It is necessary to wear ....clothes in the winter. (thick)

It is necessary to wear <u>thick</u> clothes in the winter.

Snow fell .... on the ground. (thick)

Snow fell <u>thickly</u> on the ground.

1. We .... concluded the deal. (successful)
2. He is a .... businessman. (successful)
3. There was a .... rain in the morning. (light)
4. She ran .... up the steps. (light)
5. The path was .... marked. (clear)
6. We gave him a .... signal to continue. (clear)
7. I .... disagree with you. (strong)
8. There is a .... wind from the north. (strong)
9. She waved .... (cheerful)
10. I gazed at the .... water of the lake. (tranquil)
11. The engine operates as ....as possible. (efficient)
12. Is that a .... decision? (recent)
13. He has behaved very .... (responsible)
14. .... snow is forecast for tomorrow. (heavy)
15. I opened the door .... and stepped outside. (quiet)
16. Icicles hung from the ....needles of the pine trees. (dark)

4. For each of the following sentences, pay attention to whether the word to be placed in the blank modifies a noun or an adjective, and complete the sentence with either the adjective given in brackets or the corresponding adverb, as appropriate. For example:

A .... wooden fence surrounded the playground. (high)

A <u>high</u> wooden fence surrounded the playground.

A .... skilled worker will be required for this job. (high)

A <u>highly</u> skilled worker will be required for this job.

1. They have a .... front lawn. (wide)
2. He has challenged a .... held theory. (wide)
3. Every author likes to receive................book reviews. (favorable)
4. .... situated farms often produce higher yields than other farms. (favorable)
5. Many .... incomprehensible phenomena have been explained with the help of modern science. (previous)
6. Many .... city councils have succeeded in balancing the budget. (previous)

7. .... weather conditions have prevailed for the past ten days. (unusual)

8. An .... large number of variables must be taken into account. (extreme)

9. ....few people understand the situation. (relative)

10. She wrote a .... short story. (humorous)

11. That was a .... occurring event. (frequent)

12. Our city boasts a .... bus service. (frequent)

13. It was a .... Easter Sunday. (hot)

14. It was a .... debated issue. (hot)

5. For each of the following sentences, pay attention to whether the word to be placed in the blank modifies the verb or the subject of the verb, and complete the sentence with either the adjective given in brackets or the corresponding adverb, as appropriate. For example:

We tasted the soup .... (suspicious)

We tasted the soup <u>suspiciously</u>.

The meal tasted .... (delicious)

The meal tasted <u>delicious</u>.

1. The moon appeared........................... between the clouds. (brief)
2. He looked .... (happy)
3. He looked .... at the timetable. (attentive)
4. We felt .... after supper. (sleepy)
5. After the lights went out, we felt our way .... to our rooms. (sleepy)
6. The maple tree grew .... (quick)
7. The sky grew .... (dark)
8. He became..................at the thought of giving a speech.(excited)
9. She became a teacher .... after graduating .(immediate)
10. The pastries smelled .... (sweet)
11. We .... smelled the aroma of fresh bread. (eager)

6. Rewrite the following sentences as comparisons, using the comparative form of the adverb, and the word <u>than</u>. For each sentence, use the word or words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

The living room was furnished elegantly. (the study)

The living room was furnished more elegantly than the study.

Because they were nervous, they performed badly. (they should have)

Because they were nervous, they performed worse than they should have.

1. The train travels fast. (the bus)
2. In the morning, the sun shone brightly. (in the afternoon)
3. The footpath runs straight. (the road)
4. Joe sings badly. (Rick)
5. I got up early. (you did)
6. The wild deer came near. (I had expected)
7. Her son plays the violin well. (her daughter does)
8. Captain Cook sailed far. (Columbus did)
9. You are late. (the others)
10. The stream flows swiftly. (the river)
11. She studies hard. (her classmates)
12. The project was completed successfully. (we had anticipated)

7. Rewrite the following sentences, using progressive comparisons instead of the adverb increasingly, and using the expression less and less instead of the adverb decreasingly. For example:

The rain fell increasingly heavily.

The rain fell more and more heavily.

The wind blew increasingly hard.

The wind blew harder and harder.

Finally, the rain drummed decreasingly loudly on the roof.

Finally, the rain drummed less and less loudly on the roof.

1. As the evening wore on, we spoke decreasingly animatedly.
2. The spectators cheered increasingly loudly.
3. The chirping of the crickets disturbed us increasingly little.
4. As he grew older, he walked increasingly far.
5. The new shuttle service functioned increasingly reliably.
6. The sun shone decreasingly intensely.
7. As I became tired, I wrote increasingly slowly.
8. The boy learned to read increasingly well.

8. Rewrite each of the following sentences, changing the positive form of the adverb to the superlative form, and using the definite article the. Use the words given in brackets as the second part of the comparison. For example:

This window opens easily. (of all the windows in the room)

This window opens the most easily of all the windows in the room.

He plays this piece well. (of anyone in the band)

He plays this piece the best of anyone in the band.

1. She understood the lesson readily. (of all the pupils in the class)
2. This kite flies badly. (of all the kites I have ever made)
3. That train leaves early. (of all the trains departing from this station)
4. Last night it snowed hard. (of any night in the year)
5. The potato field produces little. (of all the fields on the farm)
6. This highway runs straight. (of all the highways in the country)
7. She speaks quietly. (of all the people I know)
8. The bass sings low. (of all the singers)
9. Eagles fly high. (of all the birds which live in the mountains)
10. She prepares meals well. (of all the students in the class)
11. They regard his proposal favorably. (of all the proposals they have received)
12. Bill ran far. (of all the boys)
13. His arrow came near. (to the center of the target)
14. This bus travels slowly. (of all the buses)

9. Paying attention to the sentence structure, complete each of the following sentences correctly by filling in the blank with the positive, comparative, or superlative form of the adverb given in brackets. For example:

We clapped as .... as we could. (loudly)

We clapped as loudly as we could.

They arrived ....than they had expected. (promptly)

They arrived more promptly than we had expected.

She swam the .... of all the girls in the school. (far)

She swam the farthest of all the girls in the school.

The more you study, the .... you will do on the test. (well)

The more you study, the better you will do on the test.

1. Cheetahs run the .... of all mammals. (fast)
2. We described our experiences as ....as we could. (vividly)
3. The more encores she sings, the .... the audience applauds. (enthusiastically)
4. He practices the .... of all the members of the team. (diligently)
5. The ....you study, the poorer your marks will be. (little)

6. He explains his ideas.................than you do. (convincingly)
7. They wrote as .... as possible. (intelligibly)
8. Seagulls fly .... than ducks do. (well)
9. Birds of prey soar the .... of all birds. (impressively)
10. The ....you exercise, the stronger you will become. (much)
11. They have traveled as .... as possible. (widely)
12. She examined the material ....than I did. (thoroughly)
13. He explains the subject the .... of all the teachers in the school. (well)
14. Advanced skiers complete the course twice as .... as beginners. (rapidly)
15. I have written out the assignment ....than you have. (neatly)
16. The .... I walk, the more refreshed I feel. (far)

……………………………………………………………………………………

Chapter 25 – Answers for Exercises 1-9

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. duly
2. noisily
3. palely
4. comfortably
5. dogmatically
6. normally
7. slowly
8. steadily
9. dramatically
10. agilely
11. simply
12. shrilly
13. luckily
14. frantically
15. wholly
16. punctually
17. densely
18. solely
19. synthetically

20. readily

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. straight
2. early
3. quickly
4. fast
5. cautiously
6. high
7. well
8. late
9. badly
10. little
11. annually
12. immediately
13. weekly
14. first
15. suitably

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. successfully
2. successful
3. light
4. lightly
5. clearly
6. clear
7. strongly
8. strong
9. cheerfully
10. tranquil
11. efficiently
12. recent
13. responsibly
14. Heavy
15. quietly
16. dark

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. wide
2. widely
3. favorable
4. Favorably
5. previously
6. previous
7. Unusual
8. extremely
9. Relatively
10. humorous
11. frequently
12. frequent
13. hot
14. hotly

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. briefly
2. happy
3. attentively
4. sleepy
5. sleepily
6. quickly
7. dark
8. excited
9. immediately
10. sweet
11. eagerly

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. The train travels faster than the bus.
2. In the morning, the sun shone more brightly than in the afternoon.
3. The footpath runs straighter than the road.
4. Joe sings worse than Rick.
5. I got up earlier than you did.
6. The wild deer came nearer than I had expected.

7. Her son plays the violin better than her daughter does.
8. Captain Cook sailed farther than Columbus did.
9. You are later than the others.
10. The stream flows more swiftly than the river.
11. She studies harder than her classmates.
12. The project was completed more successfully than we had anticipated.

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. As the evening wore on, we spoke less and less animatedly.
2. The spectators cheered more and more loudly.
3. The chirping of the crickets disturbed us less and less.
4. As he grew older, he walked farther and farther.
5. The new shuttle service functioned more and more reliably.
6. The sun shone less and less intensely.
7. As I became tired, I wrote more and more slowly.
8. The boy learned to read better and better.

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. She understood the lesson the most readily of all the pupils in the class.
2. This kite flies the worst of all the kites I have ever made.
3. That train leaves the earliest of all the trains departing from this station.
4. Last night it snowed the hardest of any night in the year.
5. The potato field produces the least of all the fields on the farm.
6. This highway runs the straightest of all the highways in the country.
7. She speaks the most quietly of all the people I know.
8. The bass sings the lowest of all the singers.
9. Eagles fly the highest of all the birds which live in the mountains.
10. She prepares meals the best of all the students in the class.
11. They regard his proposal the most favorably of all the proposals they have received.
12. Bill ran the farthest of all the boys.
13. His arrow came the nearest to the center of the target.

14. This bus travels the most slowly of all the buses.

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. fastest
2. vividly
3. more enthusiastically
4. most diligently
5. less
6. more convincingly
7. intelligibly
8. better
9. most impressively
10. more
11. widely
12. more thoroughly
13. best
14. rapidly
15. more neatly
16. farther

(26) Prepositions

Exercises for chapter 26

1. Paying attention to the meanings of the prepositions, fill in the blanks with the most appropriate prepositions chosen from those given in brackets. For example:

She made a speech ....the future of the school. (about, around)

She made a speech <u>about</u> the future of the school.

<u>D</u> comes .... <u>C</u> and <u>E</u> in the alphabet. (between, beyond)

<u>D</u> comes between <u>C</u> and <u>E</u> in the alphabet.

1. This train travels from London .... Paris. (at, to)
2. We stood at the back .... the theater. (of, on)
3. She went to Rome .... France. (versus, via)
4. The store is open daily ....Monday to Friday. (for, from)
5. I took my hat .... the table. (of, off)
6. He looks .... his brother. (despite, like)
7. The children ran .... the school. (of, out of)
8. He opened the box .... a screwdriver. (at, with)
9. I will work .... five o'clock. (until, up)
10. We walked .... the restaurant. (despite, past)
11. At three o'clock we reached the top .... the hill. (of, off)
12. You have delivered all of the papers .... this one . (between, but)
13. The bank is .... the school. (opposite, out of)
14. ....the danger, he decided to climb the mountain. (despite, except)
15. The treasure was hidden .... the earth. (under, up to)
16. <u>A</u> comes .... <u>B</u> in the alphabet. (before, behind)
17. I went to work .... my umbrella. (out of, without)
18. When it is heated, water changes .... steam. (in, into)
19. Nocturnal animals usually sleep.......................................the day. (during, underneath)
20. The squirrel ran .... the wall. (along, among)

2. Paying attention to the uses of the prepositions among, at, beside, besides, between, for, in, on and since, fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions chosen from those given in brackets. For example:

They live ....359 Southdale Avenue. (at, on)

They live at 359 Southdale Avenue.

The meeting will take place ....Tuesday. (at, on)

The meeting will take place on Tuesday.

We have been traveling ....several days. (for, since)

We have been traveling for several days.

She has been working........six o'clock this morning. (for, since)

She has been working since six o'clock this morning.

1. He lives .... 19 Tower Road. (at, on)
2. We will be gone .... two days. (for, since)
3. Tom and his friend will divide the money .... themselves. (among, between)
4. They will be returning .... November. (in, on)
5. I have known him .... three years. (for, since)
6. Many foods.....................milk contain calcium. (beside, besides)
7. I will arrive .... six o'clock. (at, in)
8. He has been gone .... Friday. (for, since)
9. The store is located .... North Street. (at, on)
10. She is leaving .... five minutes. (at, in)
11. Bridget, Leslie and Sarah will discuss the matter .... themselves. (among, between)
12. I have known her .... last year. (for, since)
13. We expect them .... Wednesday. (in, on)
14. The cat was sitting .... the stove. (beside, besides)
15. The play begins .... seven thirty. (at, on)
16. We waited .... fifteen minutes. (for, since)
17. Columbus crossed the Atlantic .... 1492. (at, in)
18. There are many possibilities .... the ones I have mentioned. (beside, besides)
19. She will call us .... half an hour. (at, in)
20. His birthday is .... the 8th of January. (in, on)

3. Fill in the blanks with the missing prepositions. For example:

She wants to leave ....once.

wants to leave <u>at</u> once.

I brought the wrong book ....mistake.

I brought the wrong book <u>by</u> mistake.

1. Since the restaurant is usually crowded, it is advisable to make reservations .... advance.

2. Because we have no car, we go everywhere .... foot.

3. I was ....breath after running up the long flight of stairs.

4. We walked out of the room .... tiptoe, so as not to disturb the sleeping baby.

5. Inside your passport, you should write the name of your next .... kin.

6. We made out the report .... triplicate.

7. Citrus fruits, ... example oranges and lemons, require a long growing season.

8. The movie seemed to go on forever, but .....last it was over.

9. She is so busy, she always seems to be .... a hurry.

10. Many people believe birds are incapable of reasoning, but .... fact, some birds are quite intelligent.

11. Since he is not very trustworthy, I advise you to take what he says .... a pinch of salt.

12. I went to the library, but the book I wanted was out ....loan.

13. To save money, we usually buy flour and rice .... bulk.

14. Since he could offer us no proof, we had to take his story …………... trust.

15. She knows hundreds of poems .... heart.

16. Since we cannot find a place to live, ... the time being, we are staying at a cheap hotel.

17. Little ....little, the clouds dispersed and the sun became brighter.

18. Because of its importance, we studied the report..... detail.

19. All of the clothes sold in this store were made .... hand.

20. At an intersection, pedestrians usually have the right ....way.

4. For each underlined word or phrase, substitute an idiom containing the preposition indicated in brackets. For example:

She came <u>punctually</u>. (on)

She came on time.

His remarks were brief and relevant. (to)

His remarks were brief and to the point.

1. Incidentally, I heard that there is a sale at the bookstore. (by)
2. What do you do as a profession? (for)
3. The boy left his books at school deliberately. (on)
4. There is a great deal to be won or lost. (at)
5. Before long, the ship had cast off and was moving. (under)
6. The violin strings are not at the correct pitch. (out of)
7. Her paintings are being exhibited at the library. (on)
8. The university operates with a very small amount of money. (on)
9. Occasionally we have a picnic by the river. (in)
10. There are no job openings in the company now. (at)
11. We have a large variety of produce available. (on)
12. I want to speak to you not in front of other people. (in)
13. Under those circumstances, we should proceed cautiously.(at)
14. Gradually, we began to unravel the mystery. (by)
15. At the beginning, it was not obvious what to do. (at)
16. When looking back over past events, we can see that important changes have taken place. (in)
17. The two friends sat beside one another. (by)
18. I could see immediately that something was wrong. (at)
19. I see her occasionally. (from)
20. Does the store have any paint brushes available? (in)

5. Paying attention to the nouns which are usually followed by certain prepositions, fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

Do you have any objection ....my plan? (on, to)

Do you have any objection to my plan?

She has a good attitude .... her job. (of, toward)

She has a good attitude toward her job.

1. We played a joke .... him. (of, on)
2. Who else has access .... the computer files? (of, to)
3. I have no recollection .... the event. (of, on)
4. Missing the bus is no excuse .... being late. (for, of)
5. I have confidence .... his ability. (for, in)

6. That is only one example .... what I mean. (in, of)
7. Pay close attention .... the traffic signals. (for, to)
8. She takes an active interest .... community events. (in, of)
9. Do you have any proof .... that? (of, to)
10. You should make allowances ....their lack of experience. (for, on)
11. There is a lack .... information on this subject. (for, of)
12. The report should shed some light ....the situation. (for, on)
13. He has a talent .... putting people at ease. (for, with)
14. I received no reply ..... my letter. (on, to)
15. We soon took command .... the situation. (of, with)
16. They are constantly finding fault.....other people. (of, with)
17. I have faith .... their good intentions. (in, to)
18. She has a reputation .... having the ability to deal with any situation. (for, of)
19. People often make fun ....what they do not understand. (of, to)
20. We will take a survey .... the participants. (of, on)

6. Paying attention to the adjectives which are usually followed by certain prepositions, fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

We were curious ....what they were doing. (about, for)

We were curious about what they were doing. (about, for)

The design of most computers is based ....binary arithmetic. (for, on)

The design of most computers is based on binary arithmetic.

1. We are ready .... anything. (for, to)
2. I was anxious .... her. (about, to)
3. Photographic film is sensitive .... light. (of, to)
4. Seals are adapted .... life in the water. (at, to)
5. He is descended .... Mary, Queen of Scots. (from, of)
6. Cotton is more resistant.................. fire than nylon is. (for, to)
7. After the show, the radio station was besieged .... telephone calls. (from, with)
8. She was praised .... her achievements. (for, to)
9. The public library is accessible .... everyone. (to, with)
10. Are you familiar .... the procedures? (for, with)

11. They were overjoyed .... the news. (at, to)
12. We are proud .... our accomplishments. (for, of)
13. I was pleased .... the results. (of, with)
14. Are you aware .... the risks involved? (of, with)
15. Lack of exercise can be detrimental ....one's health. (of, to)
16. We are satisfied .... the arrangement. (for, with)
17. She is interested .... animals. (for, in)
18. He is well qualified .... the job. (for, to)
19. Young children are often suspicious .... strangers. (of, to)
20. A knowledge of mathematics is essential …………………....an engineer. (to, with)

7. Paying attention to the verbs which are usually followed by certain prepositions, fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

He likes listening ....music. (on, to)
He likes listening <u>to</u> music.
They cooperated .... one another. (of, with)
They cooperated <u>with</u> one another.

1. Heat and light radiate .... the sun. (from, of)
2. Where the event will be held depends ....the weather. (of, on)
3. She loves to quote .... Shakespeare's plays. (from, to)
4. You need to concentrate ....what you are doing. (into, on)
5. The students protested ......the high student fees. (against, from)
6. A balanced meal consists .... vitamins, minerals, proteins and carbohydrates. (of, with)
7. Twenty people applied .... the job. (for, with)
8. She likes to participate ....extracurricular activities. (in, with)
9. He paid .... the meal. (for, on)
10. We do not approve .... that type of behavior. (of, in)
11. He subscribes .... four magazines. (of, to)
12. The dog barked .... the mailman. (at, to)
13. Please refrain .... smoking. (from, to)
14. Do you concur .... my conclusions? (for, with)
15. The problem stems ....a lack of proper training. (for, from)
16. We apologized .... our absence. (for, to)

17. He is engaged .... starting a business. (in, on)
18. The two children stared .... each other. (at, to)
19. They registered .... the course. (for, of)
20. We rely .... the city bus service. (on, with)

………………………………………………………………………………

Answers to Exercises 1-7 Chapter 26

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. to
2. of
3. via
4. from
5. off
6. like
7. out of
8. with
9. until
10. past
11. of
12. but
13. opposite
14. Despite
15. under
16. before
17. without
18. into
19. during
20. along

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. at
2. for
3. between
4. in
5. for
6. besides
7. at

8. since
9. on
10. in
11. among
12. since
13. on
14. beside
15. at
16. for
17. in
18. besides
19. in
20. on

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. in
2. on
3. out of
4. on
5. of
6. in
7. for
8. at
9. in
10. in
11. with
12. on
13. in
14. on
15. by
16. for
17. by
18. in
19. by
20. of

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. By the way,
2. for a living.
3. on purpose.
4. at stake.
5. under way.
6. out of tune.
7. on display
8. on a shoestring.
9. Once in a while
10. at the moment. or at present.
11. on hand.
12. in private.
13. At that rate,
14. Bit by bit or By degrees or Little by little,
15. At first
16. In retrospect,
17. side by side.
18. see at a glance.
19. from time to time.
20. in stock?

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. on
2. to
3. of
4. for
5. in
6. of
7. to
8. in
9. of
10. for
11. of
12. on
13. for

14. to
15. of
16. with
17. in
18. for
19. of
20. of

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. for
2. about
3. to
4. to
5. from
6. to
7. with
8. for
9. to
10. with
11. at
12. of
13. with
14. of
15. to
16. with
17. in
18. for
19. of
20. to

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. from
2. on
3. from
4. on
5. against
6. of

7. for

8. in

9. for

10. of

11. to

12. at

13. from

14. with

15. from

16. for

17. in

18. at

19. for

20. on

(27) Phrasal verbs

Exercises for chapter (27)

1. For each of the following sentences, substitute the appropriate phrasal verb given in brackets for the underlined word or phrase. For example:

I will <u>request</u> a bus schedule. (ask for, stand for)

I will <u>ask for</u> a bus schedule.

Don't worry. They won't <u>make fun of</u> you. (call on, laugh at)

Don't worry. They won't <u>laugh at</u> you.

1. She <u>resembles</u> her mother. (looks after, takes after)
2. We <u>perused</u> the report. (sided with, waded through)
3. I will <u>adhere</u> to what I said before. (burst into, stick to)
4. We will <u>demand</u> a review of the situation. (call for, guard against)
5. His parents <u>disapprove</u> of his participating in so many extracurricular activities. (bank on, frown on)
6. Without hesitating, she <u>started</u> her speech. (launched into, hinged on)
7. I am <u>depending</u> on your support. (counting on, picking on)
8. He will <u>take care of</u> everything. (look after, settle for)
9. What do these initials <u>represent</u>? (provide for, stand for)
10. All of our plans <u>depend on</u> the availability of transportation. (hinge on, touch on)

2. Rewrite the following sentences, changing the object of the preposition to a pronoun. For example:

He lived on a small allowance.

He lived on <u>it</u>.

I sided with my brother.

I sided with <u>him.</u>

1. We are counting on our friends.
2. Will you stick to the agreement?
3. She takes after her grandmother.
4. No one has tampered with the letters.
5. Yesterday I ran into your uncle.
6. They saw through the plot.
7. He cut across the vacant lot.

8. I confided in my niece.

3. For each of the following sentences, place the adverb of manner given in brackets between the verb and the preposition. For example:

He deals in rare stamps. (exclusively)

He deals <u>exclusively</u> in rare stamps.

The introduction touches on the main points. (briefly)

The introduction touches <u>briefly</u> on the main points.

1. He dealt with every objection to his plan. (confidently)
2. She sided with her friend. (unhesitatingly)
3. We cut across the lawn. (quickly)
4. Since we were very hungry, we settled for bread and potatoes. (uncomplainingly)
5. I leafed through the material. (rapidly)
6. They watched over the children. (patiently)
7. You cannot survive on tea and biscuits. (solely)
8. We entered into the discussion. (eagerly)

4. For each of the following sentences, substitute the appropriate phrasal verb given in brackets for the underlined word or phrase. For example:

He will <u>leave</u> tomorrow morning. (level off, set off)

He will <u>set off</u> tomorrow morning.

The storm will soon <u>pass</u>. (blow over, boil over)

The storm will soon <u>blow over</u>.

1. I hope she <u>arrives</u> soon. (stays up, shows up)
2. He usually <u>sleeps</u> after lunch. (buckles down, nods off)
3. We saw the plane <u>land</u>. (settle down, touch down)
4. I told her to <u>beware</u>. (pass out, watch out)
5. Someone should <u>intervene</u> before the situation gets worse . (pull in, step in)
6. They waited until the train <u>left</u>. (logged off, pulled out)
7. Don't let them <u>escape</u>. (get away, wear off)
8. We were worried when she <u>fainted</u>. (moved out, passed out)
9. The barometric pressure has <u>stopped rising</u>. (leveled off, settled in)
10. I hope you will all <u>help</u>. (give in, pitch in)

5. For each of the following sentences, substitute the appropriate phrasal verb given in brackets for the underlined word or phrase. For example:

He refused to <u>support</u> what I had said. (back up, hold back)

He refused to back up what I had said.

The game was canceled because of the rain. (called off, phased out)

The game was called off because of the rain.

1. He raised a difficult question. (brought up, filled up)
2. She is good at assessing people. (buttering up, sizing up)
3. We should de-emphasize the dangers of the situation. (hand down, play down)
4. I am returning the raincoat I borrowed. (backing up, giving back)
5. The wine had been diluted. (played down, watered down)
6. I want to organize my photographs. (sort out, try out)
7. We discussed the situation. (shouted down, talked over)
8. May I test your bicycle? (point out, try out)
9. You can collect the tickets at the box office. (fill up, pick up)
10. I erased the notes in the margins of the book. (bailed out, rubbed out)
11. Do you think they invented the whole story? (hung up, made up)
12. She summarized what we had learned so far. (sounded out, summed up)

6. The following sentences contain transitive phrasal verbs which consist of verbs followed by adverbs. Rewrite each sentence, changing the object of the verb to a pronoun, and placing the pronoun object in the correct position in the sentence. For example:

I picked up the clothes.

I picked them up.

1. We ironed out the difficulties.
2. She called up her sister.
3. We sent back the material.
4. He sent out the invitations.
5. I gave away the bicycle.
6. She brought along her younger brother.
7. We wrote down the answer.
8. She let in the cats.
9. He turned over the stone.
10. We emptied out the baskets.

7. For each of the following sentences, determine whether the underlined object indicates where the action took place, or what was acted upon, and fill

in the blank with where or what, as appropriate. Then rewrite the sentence, changing the object to a pronoun, and placing the pronoun object in the correct position in the sentence. If the object indicates where, place the pronoun object after the preposition; however, if the object indicates what, place the pronoun object before the adverb. For example:

I looked up the staircase ……………....

I looked up the staircase. Where

I looked up it.

I looked up the word. ....

I looked up the word. What

I looked it up.

1. I turned off the light... ..
2. She walked into the room... ......
3. He climbed up the ladder.. ......
4. They sent in the report.. ......
5. Children should not play on the road........................ ......
6. We set off the fireworks.. ......
7. Please put on some music.. ......
8. We turned off the main road...................................... ......
9. I cut up the cake... ......
10. The plane flew over the lake...................................... ......
11. She lives down the street... ......
12. Please pass on the information.................................... ......
13. He put down the box.. ......
14. They work in this building... ......
15. The ball rolled down the hill.. ..
16. We handed over the document....................................... ......
17. He walked off the stage... ......
18. She turned down the offer.. ......
19. They sat on the floor.. ..
20. I wound up the clock.. ......

8. Following the instructions for the previous exercise, fill in each blank with where or what. Then rewrite each sentence to include the adverb of manner given in brackets. If the object indicates where, place the adverb of manner between the verb and the preposition; however, if the object indicates what, place the adverb of manner before the verb. For example:

I walked across the bridge. .... (quickly)

I walked across the bridge. Where

I walked quickly across the bridge.

We tidied up the papers. .... (hurriedly)

We tidied up the papers. What

We hurriedly tidied up the papers.

1. The car slipped off the road. .... (suddenly)
2. We lifted up the buckets. .... (wearily)
3. The cable cars moved up the hill. .... (slowly)
4. She let down the dress. .... (carefully)
5. The book had been placed on the table. .... (neatly)
6. He was leaning against the wall. .... (idly)
7. She filed away the new material. .... (methodically)
8. We shut off the power. .... (hastily)
9. They closed up the cottage. .... (sadly)
10. The swallows flew over our house. .... (swiftly)

9. Paying attention to whether the last word in the clause is a preposition or an adverb, for each of the following sentences, underline the word which would usually be stressed in spoken English. For example:

Why did you go out?

Why did you go out?

This is what you asked for.

This is what you asked for.

1. What time did you get up?
2. What are you looking at?
3. The following idea has been put forward.
4. Which group did you come with?
5. What are they searching for?
6. Is he moving away?
7. What kind of music do you like to listen to?
8. When did you get back?
9. How did he find out?
10. When you look at this picture, what are you reminded of?
11. Which diving board did she jump from?
12. Why did you jump back?

10. For each of the following sentences, paying attention to whether the word following the verb is usually used as a preposition or as an adverb in a

phrasal verb, change the object to a pronoun object and place it in the correct position in the sentence. For example:

How did you deal with the situation?

How did you deal with it?

We put away the books.

We put them away.

1. Let us look into the possibility.
2. Who brought up the question?
3. Remember to rub out the mistakes.
4. Perhaps we can reason with your uncle.
5. They had to turn away twenty people.
6. We have scaled down our operation.
7. She looked after the baby girl.
8. Remember to stick to the plan.
9. Did you give back the dictionary?
10. How did you dispose of their objections?
11. We confided in her sister.
12. Have you figured out the answer?

11. For each of the following sentences, paying attention to whether the phrasal verb consists of a verb followed by a preposition or a verb followed by an adverb, change the object to a pronoun, and place it in the correct position in the sentence. For example:

Squirrels can survive on nuts.

Squirrels can survive on them.

Did you try on the new shoes?

Did you try them on?

1. I know I can count on my friends.
2. They put off the rehearsal.
3. I stumbled across an interesting story.
4. He is good at putting across his ideas.
5. We watched over the children.
6. She hung around the museum.
7. I would like to hand on the responsibility.
8. She leafed through the exercises.
9. I came across a city map.
10. Would you like to think over the proposal?

11. Are you going to trade in your old machine?

12. All our plans hinge on the weather.

12. For each of the following sentences, substitute the appropriate phrasal verb given in brackets for the underlined word or phrase. For example:

Don't try to avoid it. (walk away with, wriggle out of)

Don't try to wriggle out of it.

1. What does that amount to? (add up to, lead up to)
2. He is trying to compensate for the time he lost. (look out for, make up for)
3. I want to continue my studies. (carry on with, get in on)
4. We want to focus on new developments. (fall back on, zero in on)
5. Do you think you can overtake the others? (catch up with, look down on)
6. We want to abolish the waiting period. (come down to, do away with)
7. The tenants had to tolerate noisy conditions. (get away with, put up with)
8. I developed spots after walking through a patch of poison ivy. (brushed up on, came out in)
9. He admires his older brother. (looks up to, sticks up for)
10. You should reduce the number of cigarettes you smoke per day. (cut back on, zero in on)
11. The problem urgently requires a solution. (adds up to, cries out for)
12. She always defends her friends. (holds out for, sticks up for)

…………………………………………………………………………………

Answers for Exercises 1-12 Chapter 27

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. She takes after her mother.
2. We waded through the report.
3. I will stick to what I said before.
4. We will call for a review of the situation.
5. His parents frown on his participating in so many extracurricular activities.
6. Without hesitating, she launched into her speech.

7. I am <u>counting on</u> your support.
8. He will <u>look after</u> everything.
9. What do these initials <u>stand for</u>?
10. All of our plans <u>hinge on</u> the availability of transportation.

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. We are counting on <u>them</u>.
2. Will you stick to <u>it</u>?
3. She takes after <u>her</u>.
4. No one has tampered with <u>them</u>.
5. Yesterday I ran into <u>him</u>.
6. They saw through <u>it</u>.
7. He cut across <u>it</u>.
8. I confided in <u>her</u>.

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. He dealt <u>confidently</u> with every objection to his plan.
2. She sided <u>unhesitatingly</u> with her friend.
3. We cut <u>quickly</u> across the lawn.
4. Since we were very hungry, we settled <u>uncomplainingly</u> for bread and potatoes.
5. I leafed <u>rapidly</u> through the material.
6. They watched <u>patiently</u> over the children.
7. You cannot survive <u>solely</u> on tea and biscuits.
8. We entered <u>eagerly</u> into the discussion.

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. I hope she <u>shows up</u> soon.
2. He usually <u>nods off</u> after lunch.
3. We saw the plane <u>touch down</u>.
4. I told her to <u>watch out</u>.
5. Someone should <u>step in</u> before the situation gets worse.
6. They waited until the train <u>pulled out</u>.
7. Don't let them <u>get away</u>.
8. We were worried when she <u>passed out</u>.
9. The barometric pressure has <u>leveled off</u>.
10. I hope you will all <u>pitch in</u>.

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. He brought up a difficult question.
2. She is good at sizing up people.
3. We should play down the dangers of the situation.
4. I am giving back the raincoat I borrowed.
5. The wine has been watered down.
6. I want to sort out my photographs.
7. We talked over the situation.
8. May I try out your bicycle?
9. You can pick up the tickets at the box office.
10. I rubbed out the notes in the margins of the book.
11. Do you think they made up the whole story?
12. She summed up what we had learned so far.

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. We ironed them out.
2. She called her up.
3. We sent it back.
4. He sent them out.
5. I gave it away.
6. She brought him along.
7. We wrote it down.
8. She let them in.
9. He turned it over.
10. We emptied them out.

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. what: I turned it off.
2. where: She walked into it.
3. where: He climbed up it.
4. what: They sent it in.
5. where: Children should not play on it.
6. what: We set them off.
7. what: Please put it on.
8. where: We turned off it.
9. what: I cut it up.
10. where: The plane flew over it.

11. where: She lived down it.
12. what: Please pass it on.
13. what: He put it down.
14. where: They work in it.
15. where: The ball rolled down it.
16. what: We handed it over.
17. where: He walked off it.
18. what: She turned it down.
19. where: They sat on it.
20. what: I wound it up.

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. where: The car slipped suddenly off the road.
2. what: We wearily lifted up the buckets.
3. where: The cable cars moved slowly up the hill.
4. what: She carefully let down the dress.
5. where: The book had been placed neatly on the table.
6. where: He was leaning idly against the wall.
7. what: She methodically filed away the new material.
8. what: We hastily shut off the power.
9. what: They sadly closed up the cottage.
10. where: The swallows flew swiftly over our house.

Answers to Exercise 9:

1. What time did you get up?
2. What are you looking at?
3. The following idea has been put forward.
4. Which group did you come with?
5. What are they searching for?
6. Is he moving away?
7. What kind of music do you like to listen to?
8. When did you get back?
9. How did he find out?
10. When you look at this picture, what are you reminded of?
11. Which diving board did she jump from?
12. Why did you jump back?

Answers to Exercise 10:

1. Let us look into it.
2. Who brought it up?
3. Remember to rub them out.
4. Perhaps we can reason with him.
5. They had to turn them away.
6. We have scaled it down.
7. She looked after her.
8. Remember to stick to it.
9. Did you give it back?
10. How did you dispose of them?
11. We confided in her.
12. Have you figured it out?

Answers to Exercise 11:

1. I know I can count on them.
2. They put it off.
3. I stumbled across it.
4. He is good at putting them across.
5. We watched over them.
6. She hung around it.
7. 1 would like to hand it on.
8. She leafed through them.
9. I came across it.
10. Would you like to think it over?
11. Are you going to trade it in?
12. All our plans hinge on it.

Answers to Exercise 12:

1. What does that add up to?
2. He is trying to make up for the time he lost.
3. I want to carry on with my studies.
4. We want to zero in on new developments.
5. Do you think you can catch up with the others?
6. We want to do away with the waiting period.
7. The tenants had to put up with noisy conditions.
8. I came out in spots after walking through a patch of poison ivy.

9. He looks up to his older brother.

10. You should cut back on the number of cigarettes you smoke per day.

11. The problem cries out for a solution.

12. She always sticks up for her friends.

(28) Conjunctions

Exercises for chapter (28)

1. Paying attention to the meanings of the sentences, and to the presence of inverted word order, fill in the blanks with the correct coordinate conjunctions chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

I would like to come, ...I do not have time. (but, nor)

I would like to come, but I do not have time.

He has not written, ...has he called me. (but, nor)

He has not written, nor has he called me.

1. I opened the door .... looked out. (and, yet)
2. She was not in the back yard, ………..... was she upstairs. (or, nor)
3. The sun had set, ... it was still light outside. (or, yet)
4. Do you know his address .... telephone number? (but, or)
5. He has not arrived yet, ... have they. (and, nor)
6. I read the book, ... did not understand it. (but, or)
7. We searched diligently, ... found nothing. (or, yet)
8. I invited him .... his friends. (and, but)

2. Paying attention to the expressions used in the following sentences, fill in the blanks with the words and, but also, nor, or, than, then and when, as appropriate. For example:

We should either walk quickly ....take the bus.

We should either walk quickly or take the bus.

I had scarcely sat down ....the telephone rang.

I had scarcely sat down when the telephone rang.

1. I have both respect .... admiration for them.
2. Hardly had I finished reading over the problem, ... the answer leapt to my mind.
3. It will rain either today .... tomorrow.
4. He could not decide whether to tell the truth ..... keep silent.
5. It was not only a beautiful day, ... the first day of Spring.
6. If you follow the instructions, ...you should have no difficulty.
7. He is neither proud .... condescending.
8. What with one thing .... another, it was very late by the time we left the house.
9. No sooner had I opened my eyes, ...I remembered where I was.

10. Scarcely had I heard the news, ... my friend arrived.
11. I do not know whether he has seen the movie before .... not.
12. I would rather wait here .... risk missing the bus.
13. She could find the book neither at the Library,......at the bookstore.
14. No sooner had I opened the window, ... a butterfly flew into the room.
15. The crowd was both large .... enthusiastic.

3. Paying attention to the meanings of the sentences, fill in the blanks with the correct subordinate conjunctions or similar expressions chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

I went for a walk ....the sun was shining. (because, otherwise)

I went for a walk <u>because</u> the sun was shining.

Do you know .... the stores are open today? (as if, whether)

Do you know <u>whether</u> the stores are open today?

1. We recognized her at once, ... we had not seen her for years. (although, in case)
2. He kept reading .... he fell asleep. (for, until)
3. The moon will rise .... the sun sets. (as soon as, than)
4. It looks .... the train will be late. (while, as though)
5. .... she got her degree, she became a teacher. (After, Than)
6. We will not go skiing ....the weather is good. (as if, unless)
7. .... he left, he made sure he had his keys with him. (Before, For)
8. ....I told the truth, you would not believe me. (Even if, So that)
9. They have known her .... she was a child. (until, since)
10. I must leave now, ... I have a great deal of work to do. (as, than)
11. What shall we do .... it rains? (or else, supposing)
12. ....you read this book, you would be sure to enjoy it. (If, Until)
13. The door was open, ...we could hear everything. (in case, so)
14. I studied more .... he did. (than, whereas)
15. We packed a lunch, ... we knew we would soon be hungry. (lest, for)
16. I will join you, ... the weather is fine. (providing, than)
17. ....he is very busy, he is seldom at home. (Or else, Because)

18. We must hurry, ... we will be late. (so that, or else)

4. For each of the following sentences, paying attention to the structure of the sentence, fill in the blank with either the conjunction or the preposition given in brackets. For example:

.... my warning, they went ahead with their plan .(Although, Despite)

Despite my warning, they went ahead with their plan.

.... the sun was shining, the water was cold. (Although, Despite)

Although the sun was shining, the water was cold.

The price of oranges is high, ... frost damage. (because, because of)

The price of oranges is high, because of frost damage. (because, because of)

I went to see the play, ...it had good reviews. (because, because of)

I went to see the play, because it had good reviews. (because, because of)

1. We stayed up late, ... we were tired. (although, despite)
2. They went swimming, ... the coldness of the water. (although, despite)
3. I enjoy the course, ... the professor is a good teacher. (because, because of)
4. She looks .... your sister. (as if, like)
5. Please wait .... I make a phone call. (during, while)
6. Did you hear any noises ....the night? (during, while)
7. It looked .... we would not be able to leave until the next day. (as if, like)
8. We all felt tired ....the hot weather. (because, because of)
9. I read a book .... I was waiting. (during, while)
10. Her eyes shone .... stars. (as if, like)
11. They managed to work together, ... their differences of opinion. (although, despite)
12. I left home early, ... I had to do several errands. (because, because of)
13. He speaks about the subject ....he were an expert. (as if, like)
14. We rested ....the hottest part of the day. (during, while)
15. .... she lost her way twice, she arrived safely. (Although, Despite)
16. .... their interest in comets, they decided to study astronomy. (Because, Because of)

5. Paying attention to the meanings of the sentences, fill in the blanks with the correct connecting adverbs chosen from the pairs given in brackets. For example:

Will you come with me? .... I shall have to go alone.)Also, Otherwise)

Will you come with me? Otherwise I shall have to go alone.

She is kind. ...., she is rather forgetful. (However, Consequently)

She is kind. However, she is rather forgetful.

1. The work was new to me. ...., it did not seem difficult. (Consequently, Nevertheless)
2. Continue along Queen Street. ....turn left. (Then, Therefore)
3. It was very misty. ...., we could not get a clear view of the mountain. (Hence, However)
4. We had walked several miles. ...., we did not feel tired. (Accordingly, Still)
5. She is a talented actress. ...., she is very beautiful. (Moreover, Thus)
6. We take the bus every day. ...., we are familiar with the bus route. (Nevertheless, Thus)
7. The child was sleepy. ...., we went home early. (Otherwise, Therefore)
8. The food was delicious. ...., the service was excellent. (Likewise, Nevertheless)
9. We looked everywhere. ...., we could not find the keys. (However, Thus)
10. The book is long. ...., the vocabulary is difficult. (Consequently, Furthermore)
11. Luckily, the moon was bright. ...., we could not have seen the path. (Accordingly, Otherwise)
12. He is old. ...., his mind is still active. (Nonetheless, Therefore)

6. Paying attention to the structure of the sentences, fill in the blanks with the conjunctions or connecting adverbs given in brackets. Make sure that the sentences conform to the rules of correct formal English. For example:

It was very hot. ...., we decided to go swimming . (Consequently, So)

It was very hot. Consequently, we decided to go swimming.

It was very hot, ...we decided to go swimming. (Consequently, So)

It was very hot, so we decided to go swimming.

1. I have invited him. ...., I have invited his sister. (Also, And)
2. He walked up to the door .... knocked. (and, likewise)
3. The bus fare is expensive; ...., I prefer to walk. (so, therefore)
4. She is well-educated. ...., she has very good manners. (And, Besides)
5. I would rather travel by train, ... the bus leaves earlier. (but, however)
6. We were born in this village; ...., we know everyone here. (hence, so that)
7. Put less wood on the fire, ... it will be too smoky. (or, otherwise)
8. They got off the train. .... they began to search for a hotel. (And, Then)
9. She studied for many months; ...., she knew the material thoroughly. (consequently, so that)
10. The weather was hot; ...., the air was humid. (and, moreover)
11. Please come with us, ... I can introduce you to my friends. (thus, so that)
12. The sun was warm, ... a cool breeze blew in from the sea. (but, however)
13. I have read this book before; ...., I do not remember the plot. (but, however)
14. They were hot .... tired. (also, and)
15. The door was locked; ...., we would have waited inside. (or, otherwise)
16. I have known her for many years; ...., I understand her character well. (so that, thus)
17. We opened the window .... fresh air would blow into the room. (consequently, so that)
18. He is ignorant; ...., he is lazy. (and, furthermore)
19. They visited many stores; ...., they could not find what they were looking for. (but, however)

20. You should go to sleep now, ... you will be tired tomorrow. (or, otherwise)

21. I was worried; ...., I was determined not to show it. (but, nevertheless)

7. The following sentences are incorrect, because they contain correlative conjunctions, but do not use parallel construction. Rewrite the sentences correctly, using parallel construction. For example:

He owns both a typewriter and he has a word processor.

Corrected: He owns both a typewriter and a word processor.

I prefer either to read or going hiking.

Corrected: I prefer either to read or to go hiking.

1. The train proceeded neither quickly nor was it smooth.
2. They will leave either today or they will go tomorrow.
3. The child hates both getting up in the morning and to go to bed at night.
4. She is neither kind nor has patience.
5. He is not only talented, but also he has charm.
6. The street is lined with both oak trees and there are elm trees.
7. The lecture was not only very long but also it was very dull.
8. You should either eat less, or should exercise more.
9. I am not only proud to be here, but also feel happy to meet you.
10. The town is both historical and it is picturesque.

8. The following sentences are incorrect, because they present lists of ideas, but do not use parallel construction. Rewrite the sentences correctly, using parallel construction. For example:

The air was cool, dry, and was clear.

Corrected: The air was cool, dry, and clear.

He has started making kites and to fly them.

Corrected: He has started making kites and flying them.

1. We walked out of the door, down the steps and went across the street.
2. She loves singing, dancing and to play the piano.
3. The wind moaned, shrieked and was howling.
4. The music was fast, brilliant and sounded exciting.
5. He proposes to borrow money, open a store and going into business.

6. The town boasts four libraries, two theaters and there are many schools.
7. The clouds were thick, black and looked threatening.
8. He likes running, jumping and to ride a bicycle.
9. They worked carefully, quickly and were quiet.
10. The vegetables were fresh, tender and tasted delicious.

....

Answers for Exercises 1-8 Chapter 28

Answers to Exercise 1:

1. and
2. nor
3. yet
4. or
5. nor
6. but
7. yet
8. and

Answers to Exercise 2:

1. and
2. when
3. or
4. or
5. but also
6. then
7. nor
8. and
9. than
10. when
11. or
12. than
13. nor
14. than
15. and

Answers to Exercise 3:

1. although

2. until
3. as soon as
4. as though
5. After
6. unless
7. Before
8. Even if
9. since
10. as
11. supposing
12. If
13. so
14. than
15. for
16. providing
17. Because
18. or else

Answers to Exercise 4:

1. although
2. despite
3. because
4. like
5. while
6. during
7. as if
8. because of
9. while
10. like
11. despite
12. because
13. as if
14. during
15. Although
16. Because of

Answers to Exercise 5:

1. Nevertheless
2. Then
3. Hence
4. Still
5. Moreover
6. Thus
7. Therefore
8. Likewise
9. However
10. Furthermore
11. Otherwise
12. Nonetheless

Answers to Exercise 6:

1. Also
2. and
3. therefore
4. Besides
5. but
6. hence
7. or
8. Then
9. consequently
10. moreover
11. so that
12. but
13. however
14. and
15. otherwise
16. thus
17. so that
18. furthermore
19. however
20. or
21. nevertheless

Answers to Exercise 7:

1. The train proceeded neither quickly nor <u>smoothly</u>.
2. They will leave either today or <u>tomorrow</u>.
3. The child hates both getting up in the morning and <u>going to bed at night</u>.
4. She is neither kind nor <u>patient</u>.
5. He is not only talented, but also <u>charming</u>.
6. The street is lined with both oak trees and <u>elm trees</u>.
7. The lecture was not only very long but also <u>very dull</u>.
8. You should either eat less, or <u>exercise more</u>.
9. I am not only proud to be here, but also <u>happy to meet you.</u>
10. The town is both historical and <u>picturesque</u>.

Answers to Exercise 8:

1. We walked out of the door, down the steps and <u>across the street</u>.
2. She loves singing, dancing and <u>playing the piano</u>.
3. The wind moaned, shrieked and <u>howled</u>.
4. The music was fast, brilliant and <u>exciting</u>.
5. He proposes to borrow money, open a store and <u>go into business.</u>
6. The town boasts four libraries, two theaters and <u>many schools.</u>
7. The clouds were thick, black and <u>threatening</u>.
8. He likes running, jumping and <u>riding a bicycle.</u>
9. They worked carefully, quickly and <u>quietly</u>.
10. The vegetables were fresh, tender and <u>delicious</u>.

Verb Tense Overview with Examples

Simple Present	Simple Past	Simple Future
I study English everyday.	Two years ago, I studied English in England.	If you are having problems, I will help you study English. I am going to study English next year.
Present Continuous	**Past Continuous**	**Future Continuous**
I am studying English now.	I was studying English when you called yesterday.	I will be studying English when you arrive tonight. I am going to be studying English when you arrive tonight.
Present Perfect	**Past Perfect**	**Future Perfect**
I have studied English in several different countries.	I had studied a little English before I moved to the U.S.	I will have studied every tense by the time I finish this course. I am going to have studied every tense by the time I finish this course.
Present Perfect Continuous	**Past Perfect Continuous**	**Future Perfect Continuous**
I have been studying English for five years.	I had been studying English for five years before I moved to the U.S.	I will have been studying English for over two hours by the time you arrive. I am going to have been studying English for over two hours by the time you arrive.

Types of Verbs

Before you begin the verb tense lessons, it is extremely important to understand that NOT all English verbs are the same. English verbs are divided into three groups:

Group I : **Continuous Verbs**

The first group, called "Continuous Verbs", contains most English verbs. These verbs are usually physical actions which you can see somebody doing. These verbs can be used in all tenses.

Continuous Verbs

to run, to walk, to eat, to fly, to go, to say, to touch etc.

Examples:

I eat dinner every day. **Correct**

I am eating dinner now. **Correct**

Group II : **Non-continuous Verbs**

The second group, called "Non-continuous Verbs", is smaller. These verbs are usually things you cannot see somebody doing. These verbs are rarely used in "continuous" tenses. They include:

Abstract Verbs

to be, to want, to cost, to seem, to need, to care, to contain, to owe, to exist...

Possession Verbs

to possess, to own, to belong...

Emotion Verbs

to like, to love, to hate, to dislike, to fear, to envy, to mind...

Examples:

He is here now. Correct

He is being here now. Not Correct

He wants a drink now. Correct

He is wanting a drink now. **Not Correct**

Group III : **Mixed Verbs**

The third group, called "Mixed Verbs", is the smallest group. These verbs have more than one meaning. Some meanings behave like "Non-continuous Verbs", while other meanings behave like "Continuous Verbs."

Mixed Verbs

to have, to appear, to see, to hear, to feel, to weigh, to look ...

List of Mixed Verbs with Examples and Definitions:

to appear:

Donna appears confused. Non-continuous Verb

(Donna seems confused.)

My favorite singer is appearing at the jazz club tonight. **Continuous Verb**

(My favorite singer is giving a performance at the jazz club tonight.)

to have:

I have a dollar now. Non-continuous Verb

(I possess a dollar.)

I am having fun now. Continuous Verb

(I am experiencing fun now.)

to hear:

She hears the music. Non-continuous Verb

(She hears the music with her ears.)

She is hearing voices. Continuous Verb

(To hear something others cannot hear. She is hearing voices in her mind.)

to miss:

John misses Sally. Non-continuous Verb

(He is sad because she is not there.)

Debbie is missing her favorite TV program. Continuous Verb

(She is not there to see her favorite program.)

to see:

I see her. Non-continuous Verb

(I see her with my eyes.)

I am seeing the doctor. **Continuous Verb**

(To visit or consult with a doctor, dentist, or lawyer.)

I am seeing her. **Continuous Verb**

(I am having a relationship with her.)

He is seeing ghosts at night. **Continuous Verb**

(To see something others cannot see. For example ghosts, aura, a vision of the future etc.)

to smell:

The coffee smells good. **Non-continuous Verb**

(The coffee has a good smell.)

I am smelling the flowers. **Continuous Verb**

(I am sniffing the flowers.)

to taste:

The coffee tastes good. **Non-continuous Verb**

(The coffee has a good taste.)

I am tasting the cake. **Continuous Verb**

(I am trying the cake to see what it tastes like.)

to think:

He thinks the test is easy. **Non-continuous Verb**

(He considers the test to be easy.)

She is thinking about the question. **Continuous Verb**

(She is pondering the question, going over it in her mind.)

to weigh:

The table weighs a lot. **Non-continuous Verb**

(The table has a great weight.)

She is weighing herself. **Continuous Verb**

(She is determining her weight.)

Some Verbs Can Be Especially Confusing:

to be:

Joe is American. **Non-continuous Verb**

(Joe is an American citizen.)

Joe is being very American. **Continuous Verb**

(Joe is behaving like a stereotypical American.)

Joe is being very rude. **Continuous Verb**

(Joe is behaving very rudely. Usually he is not rude.)

Joe is being very formal. **Continuous Verb**

(Joe is behaving very formally. Usually he is not formal.)

NOTICE: Only rarely is "to be" used in a continuous form. This is most commonly done when a person is temporarily behaving badly or stereotypically. It can also be used when someone's behavior is noticeably different.

to feel:

The massage feels great. **Non-continuous Verb**

(The massage has a pleasing feeling.)

I don't feel well today. **Continuous or Non-continuous Verb**

I am not feeling well today.

(I am a little sick.)

NOTICE: Feel is very flexible and there is no difference in meaning in the two sentences above.)

Active / Passive: Verb Forms

Sentences can be active or passive. Therefore, tenses also have "Active Forms" and "Passive Forms". You must learn to recognize the difference to successfully speak English.

ACTIVE FORM

In active sentences, the thing doing the action is the subject of the sentence and the thing receiving the action is the object. Most sentences are active.

[Thing doing action] + [VERB] + [thing receiving action]

EXAMPLES:

The professor teaches the students.
(subject) (active verb) (object)
(doing action) (receiving action)

John washes the dishes.
(subject) (active verb) (object)
(doing action) (receiving action)

PASSIVE FORM

In some sentences, speakers use the passive form. In the passive form, the thing receiving the action is the subject of the sentence and the thing doing the action is optionally included at the end of the sentence. You can use the passive form if you think the thing receiving the action is more important or should be emphasized.
[Thing receiving action] + [BE] + [past participle of verb] + [by] + [thing doing action]

EXAMPLES:

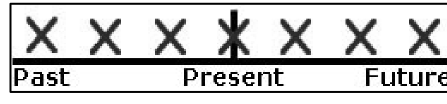
The students are taught by the professor.
(subject) (passive verb)

(receiving action) (doing action)

The dishes are washed by John.
(subject) (passive verb)
(receiving action) (doing action)

Simple Present

FORM Simple Present



EXAMPLE: [to run]

I run you run he runS she runS it runS we run they run

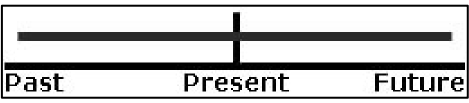
USE 1 Repeated Actions

Use the Simple Present to express the idea that an action is repeated or usual. The action can be a habit, a hobby, a daily event, a scheduled event or something that often happens. It can also be something a person often forgets or usually does not do.

EXAMPLES:

I play tennis. She does not play tennis.
The train leaves every morning at 8 am.
The train does not leave at 9am.
She always forgets her purse.
He never forgets his wallet.
Every twelve months, the Earth circles the sun.
The sun does not circle the Earth.

USE 2 Facts or Generalizations

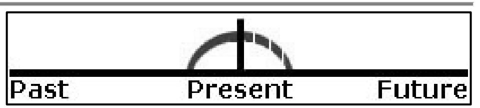


The Simple Present can also indicate the speaker believes that a fact was true before, is true now, and will be true in the future. It is not important if the speaker is correct about the fact. It is also used to make generalizations about people or things.

EXAMPLES:

Cats like milk. Birds do not like milk.
California is in America. California is not in the United Kingdom.
Windows are made of glass. Windows are not made of wood.
New York is a small city. (It is not important that this fact is untrue.)

USE 3 Now (Non-Continuous Verbs)



Sometimes speakers use the Simple Present to express the idea that an action is happening or is not happening now. This can only be done with Non-continuous Verbs and certain Mixed Verbs.

EXAMPLES:

I am here now. She is not here now. He needs help right now.
He does not need help now. He has a car.

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Simple Present

EXAMPLES:

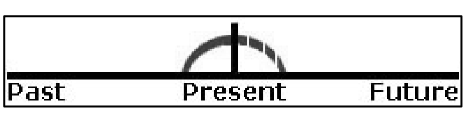
Once a week, Tom cleans the car. ACTIVE
Once a week, the car is cleaned by Tom. PASSIVE

Present Continuous

FORM Present Continuous

[AM / IS / ARE] + [VERB+ing]

EXAMPLES:



I am watching TV.
He is quickly learning the language.

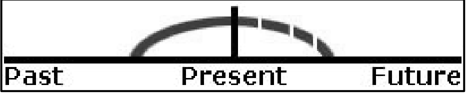
NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Present Continuous (is learning), adverbs often come between the first part and the second part (is quickly learning).

USE 1 Now

Use the Present Continuous with Continuous Verbs to express the idea that something is happening now, at this very moment. It can also be used to show that something is not happening now.

EXAMPLES:

You are learning English now. You are not swimming now.
I am sitting. I am not standing.
They are reading their books. They are not watching television.
What are you doing? Why aren't you doing your homework?



USE 2 Longer Actions in Progress Now

In English, *now* can mean "this second," "today," "this month," "this year," "this century" and so on. Sometimes we use the Present Continuous to say that we are in the process of doing a longer action which is in progress; however, we might not be doing it at this exact second.

EXAMPLES: (All of these sentences can be said while eating dinner in a restaurant.)

I am studying to become a doctor. I am not studying to become a dentist.
I am reading the book *Tom Sawyer*. I am not reading any books right now.
Are you working on any special projects at work?
Aren't you teaching at the University now?

USE 3 Near Future

Sometimes, speakers use the Present Continuous to indicate that something will or will not happen in the near future.

EXAMPLES:

I am meeting some friends after work. I am not going to the party tonight.
Is he visiting his parents next weekend. Isn't he coming with us tonight.

USE 4 Repetition and Irritation with "Always"

The Present Continuous with words such as "always" or "constantly" expresses the idea that something irritating or shocking often happens. Notice that the meaning is like Simple Present but with negative emotion. Remember to put the words "always" or

"constantly" between "be" and "verb+ing."

EXAMPLES:
She is always coming to class late.
He is constantly talking. I wish he would shut up.
I don't like them because they are always complaining.

IMPORTANT Non-Continuous Verbs/ Mixed Verbs
It is important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any "continuous" tenses. Also, certain "non-continuous" meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in "continuous" tenses. To express the idea of "happening now", you must use Simple Present USE 3.

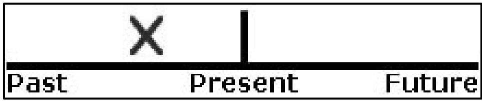
EXAMPLES:
She is loving chocolate. **Not Correct** She loves chocolate. **Correct**

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Present Continuous

EXAMPLES:
Right now, Tom is writing the letter. ACTIVE
Right now, the letter is being written by Tom. PASSIVE

Simple Past

FORM Simple Past
[VERB+ed]
EXAMPLES:
I visited my friends. I often visited my friends.
NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with only one part such as Simple Past (visited), adverbs usually come before the verb (often visited). Please remember this is different from verbs with more than one part such as Present Continuous.



USE 1 Completed Action in the Past
Use the Simple Past to express the idea that an action started and finished at a specific time in the past. Sometimes the speaker may not actually mention the specific time, but they do have one specific time in mind.

EXAMPLES:
I saw a movie yesterday. I didn't see a movie yesterday.

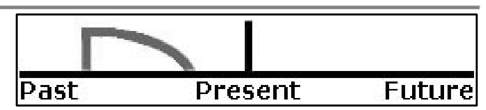
Last year, I traveled to Japan. Last year, I didn't travel to Japan.
She washed her car. She didn't wash her car.

USE 2 A Series of Completed Actions

We use the Simple Past to list a series of completed actions in the past. These actions happen 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th...

EXAMPLES:

I finished work, walked to the beach, and found a nice place to swim.
He arrived from the airport at 8:00, checked into the hotel at 9:00, and met the others at 10:00.



USE 3 Single Duration

The Simple Past can be used with a duration which starts and stops in the past. A duration is a long action often used with expressions like "for two years," "for five minutes," "all day" or "all year."

EXAMPLES:

I lived in Brazil for two years.
Shauna studied Japanese for five years.
They sat at the beach all day.
We talked on the phone for thirty minutes.
How long did you wait for them?
We waited for one hour.

USE 4 Habit in the Past

The Simple Past can also be used to describe a habit which stopped in the past. It can have the same meaning as "used to". To make it clear that we are talking about a habit we often use expressions such as "always," "often," "usually," "never," "...when I was a child" or "...when I was younger" in the sentence.

EXAMPLES:

I studied French when I was a child.
He played the violin.
She worked at the movie theater after school.
They never went to school, they always skipped.

IMPORTANT "When clauses" happen first

Clauses are groups of words which have meaning but are not complete sentences. Some clauses begin with the word *when* such as "When I dropped my pen..." or "When class began..." These clauses are called "when clauses" and they are very important. The examples below contain "when clauses."

EXAMPLES:

When I paid her one dollar, she answered my question.
She answered my question, when I paid her one dollar.
"When clauses" are important because they always happen first when both clauses are in the Simple Past. Both of the examples above mean the same thing. First, I paid her one dollar, and then, she answered my question. However, the example below has a different meaning. First, she answered my question, and then, I paid her a dollar.

EXAMPLE:

I paid her a dollar, when she answered my question.

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Simple Past

EXAMPLES:
Tom repaired the car. ACTIVE
The car was repaired by Tom. PASSIVE

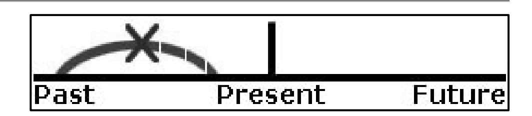
Past Continuous

FORM Past Continuous
[WAS / WERE] + [VERB+ing]

EXAMPLES:
I was studying when she called.
I was carefully picking up the snake when it bit me.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Past Continuous (was picking), adverbs often come between the first part and the second part (was carefully picking).
IMPORTANT
Clauses are groups of words which have meaning but are not complete sentences. Some clauses begin with the word *when* such as "...when she called " or "...when it bit me." Clauses with the Past Continuous usually start with *while*. *While* expresses the idea "during the time." Study the examples below. They have the same meaning.

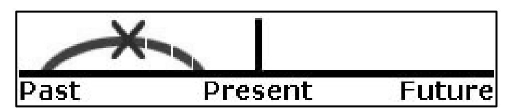
EXAMPLES:
I was studying when she called. While I was studying, she called.



USE 1 Interrupted Action in the Past
Use the Past Continuous to indicate that a longer action in the past was interrupted. The

interruption is usually an action in the Simple Past. Remember this can be a real interruption or just an interruption in time.

EXAMPLES:
I was watching TV when she called.
When the phone rang, she was writing a letter.
While we were having a picnic, it started to rain.
Sally was working when Joe had the car accident.
While John was sleeping last night, someone stole his car.



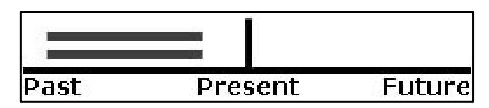
USE 2 Specific Time as an Interruption
In USE 1, described above, the Past Continuous is interrupted by an action in the Simple Past. However, you can also use a specific time as an interruption.

EXAMPLES:
Last night at 6 p.m., I was eating dinner.
At midnight, we were still driving through the desert.

IMPORTANT
In the Simple Past a specific time is used to show when an action began or finished. In the Past Continuous a specific time only interrupts the action.

EXAMPLES:
Last night at 6 p.m., I ate dinner.
(I started eating at 6 p.m.)
Last night at 6 p.m., I was eating dinner.
(I started earlier and at 6 p.m. I was in the process of eating dinner.)

USE 3 Parallel Actions
When you use the Past Continuous with two actions in the same sentence, it expresses the idea that both actions were happening at the same time. The actions are parallel.



EXAMPLES:
I was studying while he was making dinner.
While Ellen was reading, Tim was watching television.
They were eating dinner, discussing their plans and having a good time.

USE 4 Atmosphere
In English we often use a series of Parallel Actions to describe atmosphere in the past.

EXAMPLE:

When I walked into the office, several people were busily typing, some were talking on the phones, the boss was yelling directions, and customers were waiting to be helped. One customer was yelling at a secretary and waving his hands. Others were complaining to each other about the bad service.

XXXXX
Past Present Future

USE 5 Repetition and Irritation with "Always"

The Past Continuous with words such as *always* or *constantly* expresses the idea that something irritating or shocking often happened in the past. The concept is very similar to the expression *used to* but with negative emotion. Remember to put the words *always* or *constantly* between "be" and "verb+ing."

EXAMPLES:

She was always coming to class late.
He was constantly talking. He annoyed everyone.
I didn't like them because they were always complaining.

IMPORTANT Non-Continuous Verbs/ Mixed Verbs

It is important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any "continuous" tenses. Also, certain "non-continuous" meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in "continuous" tenses. To express the idea of Past Continuous with these verbs, you must use Simple Past.

EXAMPLES:

Jane was being at my house when you arrived. **Not Correct**
Jane was at my house when you arrived. **Correct**

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Past Continuous

EXAMPLES:

The salesman was helping the customer when the thief came into the store.

ACTIVE

The customer was being helped by the salesman when the thief came into the store.
PASSIVE

Present Perfect

FORM Present Perfect

[HAS / HAVE] + [past participle]

EXAMPLES:

I have seen that movie many times.

I have never seen that movie.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Present Perfect (have seen), adverbs usually come between the first part and the second part (have never seen).

USE 1 Unspecified Time Before Now

We use the Present Perfect to say that an action happened at an unspecified time before now. The exact time is not important. You CANNOT use the Present Perfect with time expressions such as "yesterday," "one year ago," "last week," "when I was a chlid," "when I lived in Japan," "at that moment," "that day" or "one day." We CAN use the Present Perfect with expressions like "ever," "never," "once," "many times," "several times," "before," "so far," "already" and "yet."

Past Present Future

EXAMPLES:

I have seen that movie twenty times.
I think I have met him once before.
There have been many earthquakes in California.
Has there ever been a war in the United States?
Yes, there has been a war in the United States.
People have traveled to the moon.

IMPORTANT How do you actually use the Present Perfect?

The concept of "unspecified time" can be very confusing to English learners. It is best to associate Present Perfect with the following topics:

TOPIC 1 Experience

You can use the Present Perfect to describe your experience. It is like saying, "I have the experience of..." You can also use this tense to say that you have never had a certain experience. The Present Perfect is NOT used to describe a specific event.

EXAMPLES:

I have been to France.

(This sentence means that you have the experience of being to France. Maybe you have been once, or several times.)

I have been to France three times.

(You can add the number of times at the end of the sentence.)

I have never been to France.

(This sentence means that you have not had the experience of going to France.)

I think I have seen that movie before.

He has never traveled by train.

Joan has studied two foreign languages.

Have you ever met him?

No, I have not met him.

TOPIC 2 Change Over Time

We often use the Present Perfect to talk about change that has happened over a period of time.

EXAMPLES:
You have grown since the last time I saw you.

The government has become more interested in arts education.

Japanese has become one of the most popular courses at the university since the Asian studies program was established.

My English has really improved since I moved to Australia.

TOPIC 3 Accomplishments

We often use the Present Perfect to list the accomplishments of individuals and humanity. You cannot mention a specific time.

EXAMPLES:
Man has walked on the moon.

Our son has learned how to read.

Doctors have cured many deadly diseases.

Scientists have split the atom.

TOPIC 4 An Uncompleted Action You Are Expecting

We often use the Present Perfect to say that an action which we expected has not happened. Using the Present Perfect suggests that we are still waiting for the action.

EXAMPLES:
James has not finished his homework yet.

Susan hasn't mastered Japanese, but she can communicate.

Bill has still not arrived.

The rain hasn't stopped.

TOPIC 5 Multiple Actions at Different Times

We also use the Present Perfect to talk about several different actions which occured in the past at different times. Present Perfect suggests the process is not complete and more actions are possible.

EXAMPLES:

The army has attacked that city five times.

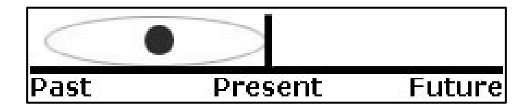
I have had four quizes and five tests so far this semester.

We have had many major problems while working on this project.

She has talked to several specialists about her problem, but nobody knows why she is sick.

IMPORTANT

When we use the Present Perfect it means that something happened at some point in our lives before now. Remember, the exact time the action happened is not important.



Sometimes we want to limit the time we are looking in for an experience. Expressions such as "in the last week," "in the last year," "this week," "this month," "so far" and "up to now" can be used to narrow the time we are looking in for an experience.

EXAMPLES:



Have you been to Mexico *in the last year*.
I have seen that movie six times *in the last month*.
They have had three tests *in the last week*.
She graduated from university less than three years ago. She has worked for three different companies *so far*.
This week my car has broken down three times.

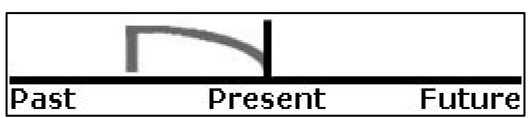
NOTICE

"Last year" and "in the last year" are very different in meaning. "Last year" means the year before now. "In the last year" means from 365 days ago until now.

EXAMPLES:

I went to Mexico *last year*.
(I went to Mexico in 1998.)
I have been to Mexico *in the last year*.
(I have been to Mexico at least once at some point between 365 days ago and now. We do not know exactly when.)

USE 2 Duration From Past Until Now (Non-continuous Verbs)



With Non-continuous Verbs and some non-continuous uses of Mixed Verbs, we use the Present Perfect to show that something started in the past and has continued up until now. "For five minutes," "for two weeks" and "since Tuesday" are all durations which can be used with the Present Perfect.

EXAMPLES:
I have had a cold for two weeks.
She has been in England for six months.
Mary has loved chocolate since she was a little girl.

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Present Perfect

EXAMPLES:
Many tourists have visited that castle. ACTIVE
That castle has been visited by many tourists. PASSIVE

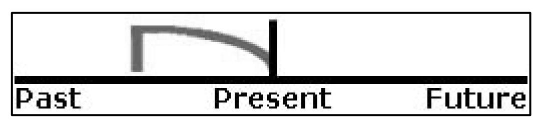
Present Perfect Continuous

FORM Present Perfect Continuous
[HAS / HAVE] + [BEEN] + [VERB+ing]

EXAMPLES:
I have been waiting here for two hours.
She has only been studying English for two years.

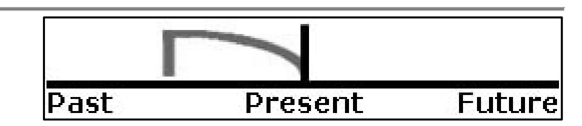
NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Present Perfect Continuous (has been studying), adverbs often come between the first part and the second part (has only been studying).

USE 1 Duration from the Past Until Now



We use the Present Perfect Continuous to show that something started in the past and has continued up until now. "For five minutes", "for two weeks", and "since Tuesday" are all durations which can be used with the Present Perfect Continuous.

EXAMPLES:
They have been talking for the last hour.
She has been working at that company for three years.
James has been teaching at the University since June.



USE 2 Recently, Lately

You can use the Present Perfect Continuous WITHOUT a duration such as "for five minutes", "for two weeks", and "since Tuesday". Without the durations, the this tense gives a more general meaning of "lately". We often use the words "lately" or "recently" in the sentence to strengthen this meaning.

EXAMPLES:
Recently, I have been feeling really tired.
She has been watching too much television lately.
Mary has been feeling a little depressed.

IMPORTANT

Remember that the Present Perfect Continuous has the meaning of "lately" or "recently." If you use the Present Perfect Continuous in a question such as "Have you been feeling alright?", it suggests that the person looks sick or unhealthy. A question such as "Have you been smoking?" suggests that you can smell the smoke on the person. Using this tense in a question suggests you can see, smell, hear, or feel the results of the action. It is possible to insult someone by using this tense incorrectly.

IMPORTANT Non-Continuous Verbs/ Mixed Verbs

It is important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in continuous tenses. To express the idea of Present Perfect Continuous with these exception verbs, you must use Present Perfect.

EXAMPLES:
Sam has been having his car for two years. **Not Correct**
Sam has had his car for two years. **Correct**

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Present Perfect Continuous
EXAMPLES:
Recently, John has been doing the work. **ACTIVE**
Recently, the work has been being done by John. **PASSIVE**
NOTE: Present Perfect Continuous is rarely used in its passive form.

Past Perfect

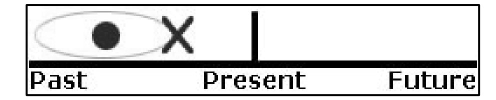
FORM Past Perfect
[HAD] + [PAST PARTICIPLE]

Examples:
I had studied a little English when I came to the U.S.
They had never met an American until they met John.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Past Perfect (had met), adverbs often come between the first part and the second part (had never met).

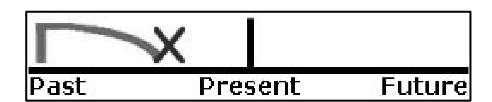
USE 1 Completed Action Before Something in Past

The Past Perfect expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past.



EXAMPLES:
I had never seen such a beautiful beach before I went to Kauai.
Had you ever visited the U.S. before your trip in 1992?
Yes, I had been to the U.S. once before in 1988.

USE 2 Duration Before Something in the Past (Non-continuous Verbs)

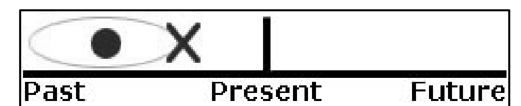


With Non-progressive Verbs and some non-progressive uses of Mixed Verbs, we use the Past Perfect to show that something started in the past and continued up until another action in the past.

EXAMPLES:
We had had that car for ten years before it broke down.
By the time Alex finished his studies, he had been in London for over eight years.

IMPORTANT Specific Times with the Past Perfect
Unlike the Present Perfect, it is possible to use specific time words or phrases with the Past Perfect. Although this is possible, it is usually not necessary.

EXAMPLE:
She had visited her Japanese relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.
If the Past Perfect action did occur at a specific time, the Simple Past can be used instead of the Past Perfect when *before* or *after* is used in the sentence. The words *before* and *after* actually tell you what happens first so the Past Perfect is optional. Both sentences below are correct.
EXAMPLE:
She had visited her Japanese relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.
She visited her Japanese relatives once in 1993 before she moved in with them in 1996.
HOWEVER
If the Past Perfect action did not happen at a specific time, Past Perfect MUST be used at all times. Compare the two sentences below.



EXAMPLE:
She had never seen a bear before she moved to Alaska. **Correct**
She never saw a bear before she moved to Alaska. **Not Correct**

ACTIVE / PASSIVE FORMS Past Perfect

EXAMPLES
George had repaired many cars before he received his mechanics license. **ACTIVE**
Many cars had been repaired by George before he received his mechanics license.
PASSIVE

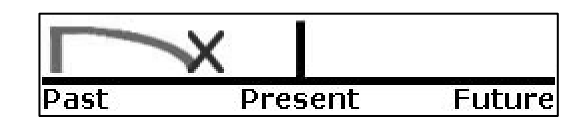
Past Perfect Continuous

FORM Past Perfect Continuous
[HAD BEEN] + [VERB+ing]

EXAMPLES:
I had been waiting there for two hours before she finally arrived.
She had only been studying English for two years before she got the job.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Past Perfect Continuous (had been studying), adverbs often come between the first part and the second part (had only been studying).

USE 1 Duration Before Something in the Past



We use the Past Perfect Continuous to show that something started in the past and continued up until another time in the past. "For five minutes" and "for two weeks" are both durations which can be used with the Past Perfect Continuous. Notice that this is related to the Present Perfect Continuous; however, the duration does not continue until now.

EXAMPLES:
They had been talking for over an hour before Tony arrived.
She had been working at that company for three years when it went out of business.
James had been teaching at the University for more than a year before he left for Asia.

USE 2 Cause of Something in the Past
Using the Past Perfect Continuous before another action in the past is a good way to show cause and effect.

EXAMPLES:
Jason was tired because he had been jogging.
Sam gained weight because he had been overeating.

IMPORTANT
If you do not include a duration such as "for five minutes," "for two weeks" or "since Friday", many English speakers choose to use the Past Continuous. There is also a difference in meaning. Compare the examples below.

EXAMPLES:
I was reading when my roommate returned.
Emphasizes the interruption of "reading."
I had been reading *for an hour* when my roommate returned.
Emphasizes the amount of time "for an hour."

ACTIVE / PASSIVE FORMS Past Perfect Continuous

EXAMPLES:
Chef Jones had been preparing the restaurant's fantastic dinners for two years, before he moved to Paris. ACTIVE
The restaurant's fantastic dinners had been being prepared by Chef Jones for two years before he moved to Paris. PASSIVE

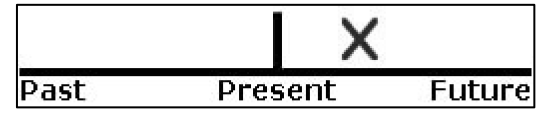
NOTE: Passive forms of the Past Perfect Continuous are not common.

Simple Future

The Simple Future has two different forms in English, "will" and "be going to." Although the two forms can sometimes be used interchangeably, they often express two very different meanings. These different meanings might seem too abstract at first, but with time and practice the differences will become clear. Both "will" and "be going to" refer to a specific time in the future.

FORM Will

[WILL] + [VERB]



EXAMPLES:

I will help him later.

I will never help him.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Simple Future (will help), adverbs usually come between the first part and the second part (will never help).

FORM Be Going To

[AM / IS / ARE] + [GOING TO] + [VERB]

EXAMPLES:

He is going to meet Jane tonight.

He is definitely going to meet Jane tonight.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Simple Future (is going to meet), adverbs usually come between the first part and the second part (is definitely going to meet).

IMPORTANT No Future in Time Clauses

Like all future forms, the Simple Future cannot be used in clauses beginning with "when", "while", "before", "after", "by the time," "as soon as," "if" and "unless." In this lesson, all verbs in Time Clauses are *italicized*.

EXAMPLES:

When you *arrive* tonight, we will go out for dinner. Correct

When you will arrive tonight, we will go out for dinner. Not Correct

USE 1 "Will" to Express a Voluntary Action

"Will" often suggests that a speaker will do something voluntarily. A voluntary action is one the speaker offers to do for someone else. Often we use "will" to respond to someone else's complaint or request for help.

EXAMPLES:

A: I'm really hungry. B: I'll make some sandwiches.

A: I'm so tired. I'm about to fall asleep. B: I'll get you some coffee.

A: The phone is ringing. B: I'll get it.

USE 2 "Will" to Express a Promise
"Will" is usually used in promises.
EXAMPLES:
I will call you when I arrive.
If I am elected President of the United States, I will make sure everyone has access to inexpensive health insurance.
I promise I will not tell him about the surprise party.

USE 3 "Be going to" to Express a Plan
"Be going to" expresses that something is a plan. It expresses the idea that a person intends to do something in the future.

EXAMPLES:
He is going to spend his vacation in Hawaii.
We are going to meet each other tonight at 6:00 PM.
A: Who is going to make John's birthday cake.
B: Sue is going to make John's birthday cake.

USE 4 "Will" or "Be Going to" to Express a Prediction
Both "will" and "be going to" can express the idea of a general prediction about the future. Predictions are guesses about what might happen in the future. In "prediction" sentences, the subject usually has little control over the future and therefore USES 1-3 do not apply. In the following examples there is no difference in meaning.

EXAMPLES:
The year 2222 will be a very interesting year.
The year 2222 is going to be a very interesting year.
John Smith will be the next President.
John Smith is going to be the next President.
The movie "Zenith" will win several Academy Awards.
The movie "Zenith" is going to win several Academy Awards.

IMPORTANT
In the Simple Future, it is not always clear which USE the speaker has in mind. Often, there is more than one way to interpret a sentence's meaning.

ACTIVE / PASSIVE FORMS Simple Future

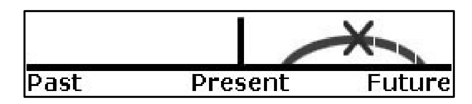
EXAMPLES:
John will certainly finish the work by 5:00 PM. ACTIVE
The work will certainly be finished by 5:00 PM. PASSIVE
Sally is going to make a beautiful dinner tonight. ACTIVE
A beautiful dinner is going to be made by Sally tonight. PASSIVE

Future Continuous

IMPORTANT No Future in Time Clauses
Like all future forms, the Future Continuous cannot be used in clauses beginning with "when", "while", "before", "after", "by the time", "as soon as", "if" and "unless".
In this lesson, all verbs in Time Clauses are *italicized*.

EXAMPLES:
While I *am finishing* my homework, she is going to make dinner. **Correct**
While I will be finishing my homework, she is going to make dinner. **Not Correct**

FORM Future Continuous
[WILL BE] + [VERB+ing]

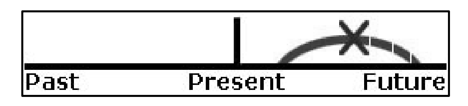


EXAMPLE:
When your plane *arrives* tonight, I will be waiting for you.
[AM / IS / ARE] + [GOING TO] + [VERBing]

EXAMPLE:
When your plane *arrives* tonight, I am going to be waiting for you.

NOTE: It is possible to use either "will" or "going to" to create the Future Continuous with little or no difference in meaning.

USE 1 Interrupted Action in the Future
Use the Future Continuous to indicate that a longer action in the future will be interrupted. The interruption is usually an action in the Simple Future. Remember this can be a real interruption or just an interruption in time.



EXAMPLES:
I will be watching TV when she *arrives* tonight.
I will be waiting for you when your bus *arrives*.
While I *am working*, Steve will make dinner. (NOTICE "am working" because of "while.")
I am going to be staying at the Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and you need to contact me.
He will be studying at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she *arrives*.
NOTE: No future tenses can be used in Time Clauses therefore you must say "While I am working... ." See the warning at the top of the page.

USE 2 Specific Time as an Interruption

In USE 1, described above, the Future Continuous is interrupted by an action in the Simple Future. However, you can also use a specific time as an interruption.

EXAMPLES:

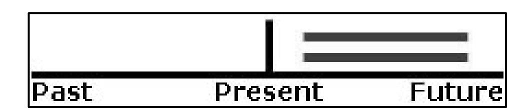
Tonight at 6 p.m., I am going to be eating dinner.
At midnight tonight, we will still be driving through the desert.

IMPORTANT

In the Simple Future a specific time is used to show the time an action will begin. In the Future Continuous, a specific time only interrupts the action.

EXAMPLES:

Tonight at 6 p.m., I am going to eat dinner.
I am going to start eating at 6 p.m.
Tonight at 6 p.m., I am going to be eating dinner.
I am going to start earlier and I will be in the process of eating dinner at 6 p.m. .



USE 3 Parallel Actions

When you use the Future Continuous with two actions in the same sentence, it expresses the idea that both actions will be happening at the same time. These are Parallel Actions.

EXAMPLES:

I am going to be studying while he *is making dinner*.
While Ellen is reading, Tim will be watching television.
Tonight, they will be eating dinner, discussing their plans, and having a good time.

USE 4 Atmosphere

In English we often use a series of Parallel Actions to describe atmosphere in the future.

EXAMPLE:

When I arrive at the party everybody is going to be celebrating. Some will be dancing. Others are going to be talking. A few people will be eating pizza and several people are going to be drinking beer. They always do the same thing.

IMPORTANT Non-Continuous Verbs / Mixed Verbs

It is important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any "continuous" tenses. Also, certain "non-continuous" meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in "continuous" tenses. To express the idea of Future Continuous with these verbs, you must use Simple Future.

EXAMPLES:
Jane will be being at my house when you arrive. **Not Correct**
Jane will be at my house when you arrive. **Correct**

ACTIVE / PASSIVE FORMS Future Continuous

EXAMPLES:
At 8:00 PM tonight, John will be washing the dog. **ACTIVE**
At 8:00 PM tonight, the dog will be being washed by John. **PASSIVE**

NOTE: Passive forms of the Future Continuous are not common.

Future Perfect

IMPORTANT No Future in Time Clauses
Like all future forms, the Future Perfect cannot be used in clauses beginning with "when," "while," "before," "after," "by the time," "as soon as," "if" and "unless". In this lesson, all verbs in Time Clauses are *italicized*.

EXAMPLES:
I am going to see a movie when I *have finished* my homework. **Correct**
I am going to see a movie when I will have finished my homework. **Not Correct**

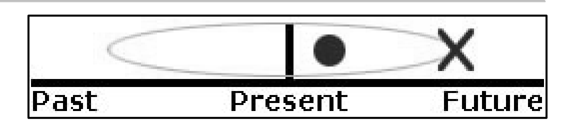
FORM Future Perfect
[WILL HAVE] + [PAST PARTICIPLE]

EXAMPLE:
I will have perfected my English by the time I *come* back from the U.S.
[AM / IS / ARE] + [GOING TO HAVE] + [PAST PARTICIPLE]

EXAMPLE:
I am going to have perfected my English by the time I *come* back from the US.

NOTE: It is possible to use either "will" or "going to" to create the Future Perfect with little or no difference in meaning.

USE 1 Completed Action Before Something in the Future

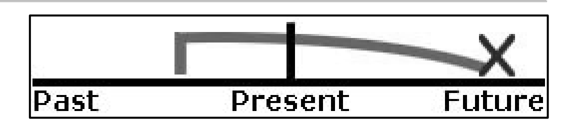


The Future Perfect expresses the idea that something will occur before another action in the future. It can also show that something will happen before a specific time in the

future.

EXAMPLES:
By next November, I will have received my promotion.
By the time he *gets* home, she is going to have cleaned the entire house.

USE 2 Duration Before Something in the Future (Non-continuous Verbs)



With Non-continuous Verbs and some non-continuous uses of Mixed Verbs, we use the Future Perfect to show that something will continue up until another action in the future.

EXAMPLES:
I will have been in London for six months by the time I *leave*.
By Monday, Susan is going to have had my book for a week.

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Past Perfect

EXAMPLES:
The Post Office will have returned my package before I can *pick* it up. ACTIVE
My package will have been returned by the Post Office before I can *pick* it up. PASSIVE

Future Perfect Continuous

IMPORTANT No Future in Time Clauses
Like all future forms, the Future Perfect Continuous cannot be used in clauses beginning with "when," "while," "before," "after," "by the time," "as soon as," "until," "if" and "unless". In this lesson, all verbs in Time Clauses are *italicized*.

EXAMPLES:
I won't tell the student the answer until he *has been working* on the math problem for more than an hour. Correct
I won't tell the student the answer until he *will have been working* on the math problem for more than an hour. Not Correct

---

FORM Future Perfect Continuous
[WILL HAVE BEEN] + [VERB+ing]

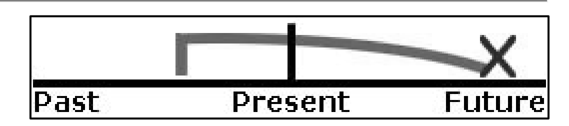
EXAMPLE:
I will have been waiting for two hours when her plane finally *arrives*.

[AM / IS / ARE] + [GOING TO HAVE BEEN] + [VERB+ing]

EXAMPLE:
I am going to have been waiting for two hours when her plane finally *arrives*.

NOTE: It is possible to use either "will" or "going to" to create the Future Perfect Continuous with little or no difference in meaning.

USE 1 Duration Before Something in the Future



We use the Future Perfect Continuous to show that something will continue up until a particular event or time in the future. "For five minutes," "for two weeks" and "since Friday" are all durations which can be used with the Future Perfect Continuous. Notice that this is related to the Present Perfect Continuous and the Past Perfect Continuous, however the duration stops in the future.

EXAMPLES:
They will have been talking for over an hour by the time Tony *arrives*.
She is going to have been working at that company for three years when it finally *closes*.
James will have been teaching at the University for more than a year by the time he *leaves* for Asia.

USE 2 Cause of Something in the Future
Using the Future Perfect Continuous before another action in the future is a good way to show cause and effect.

EXAMPLES:
Jason will be tired when he *gets* home because he will have been jogging for over an hour.
Claudia's English will be perfect when she *returns* to Germany because she is going to have been studying English in the United States for over two years.

IMPORTANT
If you do not include a duration such as "for five minutes," "for two weeks" or "since Friday", many English speakers choose to use the Future Continuous. There is also a difference in meaning. Compare the examples below.

EXAMPLES:
I will be reading when my roommate *returns*.
The reading will be interrupted.
I will have been reading for an hour when my roommate *returns*.
The reading will stop just before my roommate returns.

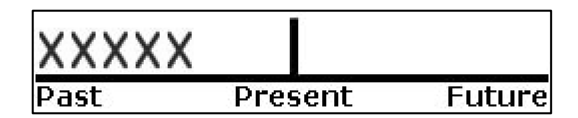
ACTIVE / PASSIVE Future Perfect Continuous

EXAMPLES:
The famous artist will have been painting the mural for over six months by the time it *is* finished. ACTIVE
The mural will have been being painted by the famous artist for over six months by the time it *is* finished. PASSIVE

NOTE: Passive forms of the Past Perfect Continuous are not common.

Used to

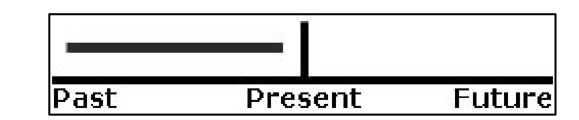
FORM Used to
[USED TO] + [verb]



EXAMPLES:
I used to go to the beach everyday.

USE 1 Habit in the Past
"Used to" expresses the idea that something was an old habit that stopped in the past. It says that something was often repeated in the past, but it is not usually done now.

EXAMPLES:
Jerry used to study English.
Sam and Mary used to go to Mexico in the summer.
I used to start work at 9 o'clock.
Christine used to eat meat, but now she is a vegetarian.



USE 2 Past Fact
"Used to" can also be used to talk about past facts or generalizations which are no longer true.

EXAMPLES:
I used to live in Paris.
Sarah used to be fat, but now she is thin.
George used to be the best student in class, but now Leena is the best.
Oranges used to cost very little in Florida, but now they are quite expensive.

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Used to

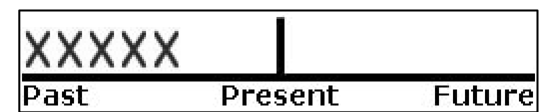
EXAMPLES:

Jerry used to pay the bills. ACTIVE
The bills used to be paid by Jerry. PASSIVE

Would Always

FORM Would Always
[WOULD ALWAYS] + [verb]

EXAMPLE:
I would always take my surf board to the beach with me.



USE 1 Habit in the Past
Like "Used to" and Simple Past, "Would Always" expresses the idea that something was an old habit which stopped in the past. It says that something was often repeated in the past, but it is not usually done now. This form suggests that someone willingly acted that way and often expresses annoyance or amusement at the habit. It can also suggest the habit was extreme.

EXAMPLES:
She would always send me strange birthday gifts.
Sam and Mary would always choose the most exotic vacation destinations.
Sally would always arrive early.
Christine would always come late to the meetings

IMPORTANT "Would Always" is Different
"Would Always" is not exactly the same as "Used to" or the Simple Past. "Would Always" cannot be used to talk about past facts or generalizations. It can only be used for repeated actions.

EXAMPLES:
Sarah was shy, but now she is very outgoing. CORRECT
Sarah used to be shy, but now she is very outgoing. CORRECT
Sarah would always be shy, but now she is very outgoing. NOT CORRECT

IMPORTANT Other Forms Are Possible
This type of repetition in the past is usually expressed by "Would Always"; however, other forms are also possible. English speakers often use "would constantly," "would forever" or simply "would." Although the last form "would" is correct, it is not suggested because it can easily be confused with other verb forms such as the Conditional or

Future in the Past. "Would never" can also be used to express the concept that someone always refused to do something in the past.

EXAMPLES:
Jerry would always bring his younger brother to the parties. CORRECT
Jerry would constantly bring his younger brother to the parties. CORRECT
Jerry would bring his younger brother to the parties. CORRECT
Jerry would never bring his younger brother to the parties. CORRECT
(Opposite meaning = Jerry refused to bring his younger brother with him to the parties.)

ACTIVE / PASSIVE Would Always

EXAMPLES:
Jerry would always pay the bills. ACTIVE
The bills would always be paid by Jerry. PASSIVE

Future in the Past

Like Simple Future, Future in the Past has two different forms in English, "Would" and "Was Going to." Although the two forms can sometimes be used interchangeably, they often express two very different meanings.

FORM Would
[WOULD] + [verb]

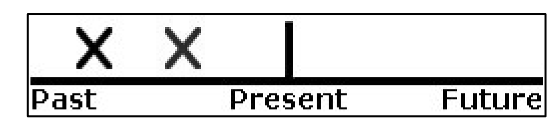
EXAMPLES:
I said I would help him later.
I said I would never help him.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Future in the Past (would help), adverbs usually come between the first part and the second part (would never help).

FORM Was Going To
[WAS / WERE] + [GOING TO] + [verb]

EXAMPLES:
I knew John was going to meet Jane after the party.
I knew John was secretly going to meet Jane after the party.

NOTE: When you are using a verb tense with more than one part such as Future in the Past (was going to meet), adverbs often come between the first part and the second part (was secretly going to meet).



USE 1 Future in Past

Future in the Past, follows the same basic rules as the Simple Future. "Would" follows the same basic rules as "Will," and "Was Going to" follows the same rules as "Be Going to." Future in the Past is used to express the idea that in the past you thought something would happen in the future. It does not matter if you are correct or not.

EXAMPLES:

I told you he was going to come to the party.
I knew Julie would make dinner.
Jane said Sam would bring his sister with him, but he came alone.
I had a feeling that the vacation was going to be a disaster.
He promised he would send a postcard from Egypt.

IMPORTANT No Future in Time Clauses

Like all future forms, Future in the Past cannot be used in clauses beginning with "when," "while," "before," "after," "by the time," "as soon as," "if" and "unless." In this lesson, all verbs in Time Clauses are *italicized*.

EXAMPLES:

I already told Mark that when he *arrived*, we would go out for dinner. **Correct**
I already told Mark that when he would arrive, we would go out for dinner. **Not Correct**

ACTIVE/PASSIVE Future in the Past

EXAMPLES:

I knew John would certainly finish the work by 5:00 PM. ACTIVE
I knew the work would certainly be finished by 5:00 PM. PASSIVE
I thought Sally was going to make a beautiful dinner tonight. ACTIVE
I thought a beautiful dinner was going to be made by Sally tonight. PASSIVE

The Catalog